

ΑΛΕΚΤΟΡ. The Cock.  
Containing the first  
part, of the most excellent, and My-  
theologicall Historie, of the valorous Squire  
*Alector*; Sonne to the Renowned Prince  
*Macrobius Franc-Gal*; and to the Peere-  
lesse Princesse *Priscaraxe*, Queene  
of high *Tartary*.

*Though long at length.*



Imprinted at London by Thomas Orwin,  
and are to bee solde by Edward White, dwel-  
ling by the little North-doore of S. Paules  
at the signe of the Gun. 1590.



**Amici cuiusdam Carmina**  
*in laudem operis.*

**A**Dfuit antiquis facundia maxima lingue,  
Hic decus eloquij; carminis alter habet.  
Tullius, Italiam summa dulcedine mulsit;  
O Rhetor dulci suauiter ore fluens.  
Mantua, Virgilium iacētat, qui carmine dulci  
Pascua descripsit: & Phrigis arma viri.  
Hammondum iacētet, celebrātq; Britannia nostrum;  
Cui, lepor in multa non minor arte latens.  
Insequitur casusque virum; seuosque dolores;  
Per mare, per terras, deliciāsque diuum.  
Dūmque sit eloquij, priscorum Laureā prima  
Fas erit Hammondo, proxima quæque dare.  
Nec satis hoc Hammonde, tibi? laus sūma secundis?  
Proximus ā primo, quisquis secundus erit.  
Non tu falsa quidem metuas conuitia vulgi,  
Doctis nec satis est, posse placere viris.  
Mome maligne vale; vigeat, relegatur, ametur;  
Ingenuiq; decus, secula nulla tegent.

**A. S.**

Ia: Smith in praise of  
Alecton.

**F**ierce Hercules resigne thy wanted fame;  
Braue Hector, here yeeld vp thy high renoune;  
Achillis stay, and throw thine Armour downe;  
For preux Alecton, now must beare the name  
Of valour, courage, prowes: when all is done:  
'Tis he alone, that hath the garland wonne.

Stoope Pyrrhus then, and Caesar strike thy sayle;  
Base Tamburlane retire, and sound retrais:  
Nor all thy bold attempts, and conquests great  
May with Alectons valour countervaille.  
For courage, prowes, and deedes of chenalree  
None may the garland weare, but onely hee.

A Dizain in praise of  
the Booke.

**O**f great exploits, of mightie seates of armes;  
Of Heuens, of hell; of doome, and dismall fates;  
Of bold attempts, of murders, hurts, and harmes;  
Of monsters rare, of machiuillian mates;  
Of wretched spight, of ouer mortall hates;  
Of diuclish drugs, of Philtres, and of charmes;  
Of countries strange, and of their brutish states;  
In briebe, who list to read of loues alarmes?  
Let him draw nere, this booke at large imparts;  
Their seuerall kinds, their ends, and their desarts.

Ia: Thornburghe. Gent.



The first part, of the most excellent  
and My-theologicall Historie, of the val-  
orous Knight Alecto, Sonne of Macrobi-  
us Franc-Gal, and of the Queene  
Priscaraxe, &c.

*Of the taking of Alecto in the chamber of the faire Dams-  
sell Noemia Gratian, his invasion and mercurious de-  
fence, of her slaughter in his armes, with her taking, accu-  
sation, and imprisonment, and of her sepulcher & Epitaph.*

CAP. I.



HE Pavement of white Marble  
in the lower court of the Pallace  
of the Gratian Lords, and Ci-  
tizens of Orbe, had changed the  
snowie hew into sanguient red,  
by the effusion of humane blood;  
and was covered in many places  
with dead bodies lying round a-  
bout the valerous Alecto, as the

The occasi-  
on of this  
slaughter  
appeareth  
more plain-  
ly in the 3.  
Cap.

grasse abated by the Power: some being slaine out right,  
and others yet drawing breath, and yielding up the Ghost.  
On the other side, the court was all replenished with har-  
nessed men, inforcing themselves either to take a live, or  
els to slay the gentle Squire: who being taken one morn-  
ning by the over late waking out of a sweete and golden  
sleepe, in the chamber of the faire Noemia Gratian, and  
perceiving

perceiuing the dore to bee broken vppon him, (more for  
 safegard of the honoꝝ of his Mistresse, than for feare,)  
 was lepte doune out of a windowe into the lower court,  
 clothed onely for haste in his shirt, with a coate of armes of  
 Saie, with a Jassarin of cloth of Golde, and like purple,  
 with a chaine of gold, and a red hat on his head: the residue  
 being bare and naked, sauing with a great and large brasse  
 shield; bearing vpon graine sinople, a Cock of gold eleuant,  
 armed and spurred with gueses; and with a faire, rich, and  
 most excellent sword, whose resulgent splendour died in  
 boyling bloud, was so terrible to his assailants by the ex-  
 ample of the most hardie already slaine, that they durst not  
 come nere him. For his sword was of so fine and harde  
 mettall, cutting and peircing like fire, and in an arme so  
 mightie, that there was no so good armour which seemed not  
 of siluered paper or brittle glasse, or that was able to de-  
 sende their bodies from being cut in peeces, if they came  
 within his right stroke. Wherefore they seeing that by the  
 approach and touch of this redoubtable sword, the certain  
 and present death to bee at hand, no man durst come nere  
 him, but standing farre off with fearefull cryings, they cast  
 at him stones and bullets of leade, darted Iauelings, shot  
 arrowes, and thrust at him with long pikes, especially the  
 two brothers Gratiens germanes to the faire Noemia  
 (who taking impatiencie and vnworthie the defame and  
 dishonour which they imagined to be done to their Sister,  
 and that by a stranger whome they had so honourable re-  
 ceaued, and so graciously entertained into their house and  
 familie, and desiring to reuenge the domesticall outrage,  
 and death of their third yong brother, whome they sawe  
 lying slaine vpon the pavement by his overmuch hardi-  
 nes) assailed vigorously aboue the rest, this yong Squire  
 with great pushes of shaking pikes and boisterous laun-  
 ces, so right and rudely, that they molested Alector more  
 than any of the others, as in deed it touched them most nere.  
 But he with his good sword and by the nimblenes and a-  
 gilitie

## of Alector.

3

guiltie of his bodie, turned awaie their blowes so readilie,  
and abated them so desperatlie that in little space hee had  
cut a sunder sixe pikes as though they had beene kites, and  
disweaponed the two brethren three times. From other  
blowes comming farre off as stones, darts, and arrowes,  
they weare not so surelie sent, but by the legeritie of the  
Squire, at whome they could haue no iust ayne, they still  
failed: and those which came right, he receiued them vpon  
his impenetrable shield, which was of such assurance, that  
it made him hardie and without feare, that carried it. Not-  
withstanding in such perill a great advantage happened to  
him. For in the middelt of the Court, there was a great  
piller of marble seauen fodee high, made in triangle wise,  
and the sides railed in with hemicircles, making three halfe  
rounded meetings. Upon this treangled stone in honoz of  
the surname of the Grazian familie was erected, the sta-  
tues of the three Graces, called the Charites, in shape of  
three naked virgins, holding one another by the hand in  
dancing wise, with their visages turned: the one forthright,  
the other sideling, and the third right behinde. Betweene  
two angles of this stone, in one of the rondles, was Alec-  
tor backed, and retired in such sort that he could not bee ta-  
ken neither strooken behinde, by reason of the largenesse  
and thiknes of the stone, and hardlie on either side, by rea-  
son of the two angles which came out of the Hemicycle,  
which defended him: in so much he had not to defend himself  
against his Enemies, but onelie before: which hee did so  
brauelie, and with so youthfull corage and with so hot and  
hopling a bloud, that hee neither thought of nor feared the  
perill, being emboulded with the vertue of the shield which  
he carried, raiused from the Trophe, against the spirite of  
hardines. Withall which forces being garnished, he en-  
ualled himselfe (in the midds of his crying enemies, farre  
more fearing, than appoaching nere him,) like a wilde  
Boze grounded and set in the wood against an infinite com-  
panie of doggs, earnestlie, but farre off baying, yelping,  
howling

See the  
whole pro-  
cesse of this  
in the 19.  
Cap.

## The first part

howling and crying : amongst whome, if any one begre o-  
 uer pong and forble presumeth to assaile him in his furie  
 and heate, incontinent with his crooked and furious tusks  
 hee setteth his gutts into the winde, and his life into the  
 ayre, giuing example and feare to all the rest; whose nature  
 is that the one being hurt the others runne awaie. Euen  
 so were they in great multitudes about Alecto, crying,  
 threating, and dispiriting him: but not ouer passing the bo-  
 dies of them, who lay slaine befoze them. Neuerthelesse  
 the number still increasing, he founde himselfe so charged  
 with stones, bullets, and bars of wood, with shafts, ar-  
 rows, and darts: that if the Goddess of health her selfe  
 would haue salued him, shee could not. And therewithall  
 issued out of the pallace a pong maide of singular beautie,  
 and of moze soueraigne grace (and this was the faire No-  
 emia Gratian, sister germaine to the three brothers Gra-  
 tians, the one slaine, and the other two fighting for re-  
 uenge, children of the wiseman Euander Gratian, and of  
 the noble Ladie Agathagine, the chiefe and auncient  
 house of the Orbitains.) This pong maide, who in truth  
 was the Mistresse of Alecto, seeing her most dere friend,  
 in the midst of his mortall enemies brought to that  
 stall of bucherie, and so many stauces and arrowes, flying  
 vpon him, that hardly shee could see him vnder his shield,  
 (moze replenished with arrowes, then the back of a hedge-  
 hog with bristells) could no longer stay her selfe, but mo-  
 ued by a furious rage of loue; setting aside all virginicall  
 shame, al maidenly feare, and al honoz of her noble blood, ex-  
 ceeding the puslanimitie of her feminine kinde, with moze  
 than a manlike heart, ran through the mortall weapons  
 of her brothers and parents assapants, vnto her friend the  
 defendoz of his owne life, and the honour of them both.  
 She being vncoised with her haire hanging downe faire  
 like Phoebus beames, with her visage sad and bedewed  
 with teares, neuertheles replenished with hardnes & grane  
 constancie, her faire bodie being moze white then the  
 statues

## of Alector.

5

Statues of the Graces of Alabaster, which were there set  
up; and illuminated amidst the white, with a natural & blue  
incarnat; couered only with her petticoate vulared, and cast  
ouer with a light cloake of white damaske put her selfe be-  
tweene the two parties, turning towards her friends and  
their adherents with a hardie and boldened voice, shee be-  
gan her speach as followeth.

My dere brethren and you my Parents and friends, I  
beseech you cease your shooting, stay your strokes, and li-  
sten a while to me. The assault which you make here vpon  
this faire, young, valiant, and vertuous Gentleman  
(whom you knowe not) is either for the loue of mee your  
Sister and kinswoman, or els for hate and reuenge of him,  
your offendor as you suppose. It is either for the one, or  
the other, or els for both, by reaso of a certen sinister suspi-  
tion (which ought rather to be taken vpon and concealed, than  
notoriously discouered.) If it bee for the loue of me, I be-  
seech you for my sake to pardon Alector his life, honour,  
and libertie; to whome (as you your selues can tell) I owe  
both life, libertie, and honour: whereby he being once dead  
it is impossible for me to liue: besides this in dooing him  
wrong, with the vile vice of ingratitude contrarie to your  
nature and the surname of your house, you shall violate the  
holie right of hospitalitie, killing your guest in your owne  
house, whom heartelie and worthilie you haue thereto  
receiued, and entertained. And if the violence which you  
do him, is to reuenge any force-fault or offence of yours,  
either of his or mine: you ought rather to conceale than  
reueale it? If you require vengeance for it, take it of mee  
which am cause of the euill (if any euill bee) and vpon my  
bodie and heart (for his vertue) bowed vnto him: to whom  
I shall be a panyer and bulwark of defence, that willingly  
spared not himselfe for me: yea and am as readie and wil-  
ling to receiue for him your shot and mortall blowes, as  
now I goe to couer and embrace him.

This spoken: the faire and gracious Noemia with

bodie and armes cast herselfe vpon the worthe Squire Ale-  
 lector, embracing him straightlie, kissing him tenderlie and  
 hanging about his neck most louinglie, their faces and  
 breasts ioynd together (which both of them had naked)  
 and couering al her body against the force of his assailants.  
 Which thing her brethren and parents perceiuing, and ha-  
 uing vnderstoode both her praier and protestation, toge-  
 ther naturall pittie and parentage mouing them, began al-  
 ready to retire and lay aside their armes; when a wretch  
 and cursed springall (who long time had pursued the  
 loue of Noëmia, and could neuer come to one onely smi-  
 ling looke,) turning his sweete into sower, and his loue and  
 desire into disdaine and dispire, with the great cherishing  
 which he saue her shewe to Alektor; purposed to slay them  
 both at once: wherefore seeing his oportunitie he let fly an  
 arrowe fethered with light inconstancie, and bedded with a  
 hed of cruell anger, tempoied with the venym of ielousie,  
 thinking to dispatch them both at one instant: but the cur-  
 sed arrowe lighting in the right side of Noëmia passed  
 through her bodie, whereby of a suddaine her beautifull  
 flesh, smock, and cloke of white damaske, changed their  
 snowie hewe into a vermillion collour, and the Damosell  
 feeling her inwarde deadly wound, pittifullie cried out:  
 “ Alas I am wounded to the death for you my friende  
 “ Alektor: brieft hath been the pleasure of our loues;  
 “ and sad the departure. The flower of my beautie and  
 “ youth is as soone vaded againe, as the morning rose,  
 “ plucked vp and withered at night: But the death is  
 “ somuch lesse grievous vnto mee, in that I am slaine  
 “ by sauing you from that mortall stroke; and in that I  
 “ die betweene your armes (my deere friend) leauing  
 “ to you therefore the reuenge. At these words her speech  
 failed her, and her eyes closing, she inclined her mouth vpon  
 the face of Alektor: who thinking to ease her, pulled  
 out the wicked arrowe, but with drawing it out, her life  
 with her bloud departed: and this (not long before) so  
 faire

saire and gracious creature fell downe dead at the feete  
of her friend Alector, so sad and so enraged with furerie of so  
villanous a shot, that forgetting himselfe, and the present  
perill wherein he was, by ardent desire of reuenge: and to  
recounter the murdering shooter and slayer of his Noë-  
mia, came out of his foze, throwing himselfe like a wound-  
ed Lyon through the midst of the multitude, breaking the  
peace, beating downe all befoze him, and with his strong  
shield repulsing all that he met, furiously cried out: Trai-  
terous Archer, murderer o' Maidens, where arte thou?  
Why presentest thou not thy selfe befoze me? Thou leaue-  
st coward and traitor, to the end I may accompanie the most  
vnworthie of death that euer liued, or that I may fill my  
selfe of reuenge with the clearest of thy bloud? Cruell Ti-  
ger; lurking Serpent, coward and wicked Crocodile, that  
without offence hast giuen death to the liuest vertue,  
and after fliest away like a waspe leauing her venomous  
sting behinde her, darest thou present thy selfe vnto mee?  
So went Alector crying and furiously threating, stri-  
king, and abating downe of men, that no man how hardie  
soeuer he were, durst stand against him, vnlesse he ment to  
be flaine. But whiles, through desperate rage he layed so  
about him at randon, striking vpon those whome were be-  
foze him, and taking no regarde to those who followed  
him, suddainely hee sounde himselfe assailed with sixe puis-  
sant men, who by maine foze toke from him his shield, and  
so consequently one parte of his hardines: and albeit hee  
made much resistance to the great hurt of his enemies, yet  
neuerthelesse the multitude so oppressed and ouer charged  
him that his sworde fell out of his hand, the which one of  
the brothers Gracians toke vp with the shield. So was  
Alector taken and led by foze of people to the Potentate,  
gouernour of the towne and chiefe Iustice called Diocles  
who seeing this saire young man of such a liberall counte-  
nance to bee accused by so many voyces speaking against  
him, the one accusing him of Rape, another of Treason,  
another

another of fornication, and others of many murders. To all which accusations he answered nothing, neither demanded any thing but the death, to accompanie his most deere and wofull Noëmia,) would not giue iudgemēt headlong, but vowing the vnetie of a Potentate (like a most wise man) knowing all these people to be passionate, the one partie with furie and appetite of reuenge, and the other with desperation, grieve, sorrowe, enuie, and contempt of life: aduised himselfe to let both parties coole vntill the next morning, when by their cold blood they might retourne to reason and their right sense, whereupon adressing his speeche vnto the tumultuous people, and chiefly to the two brothers complainants, hee spake in this manner: Lordes  
 “ *Gratians*, to morrow the parties being heard, I will  
 “ shew you right. Meane while returne your selues in  
 “ peace, and I will keepe the offendor in sure custodie.  
 This saide, they all retired themselves euill content enough. Alestor was then committed to the keeping and custodie of the Capitaine Palatine, and the others departed to goe burie their dead, amongst whom the foresaide faire Noëmia was founde slaine, and buried with great lamentation of her brothers according to the vse of the countrie, euē in the same place where she was slaine, hard vnder the foresaid pillar of the graces, for the excellent giftes of spirite and bodie that in her life time beyond fortune they had ennobled her withall, and in the stone was ingrauen this Epitaph.

Lo here Noëmia faire, that constant Maide doth lie  
 before these Graces who bewaile her want of breath:  
 That (for *Alestors* sake, her stedfast faith to trie)  
 hath felt the stroke of loue, and dint of cruell death.

# of Alektor.

9

*Of the accusation and proceſſe againſt Alektor, and of his defence.*

C A P. 2.



**T**HE next daie the Lorde Diocles Potentate and chiefe Iuſtice of Orbe, ſitting vpon the Tribunall ſeate in the great Baſilicq, cauſed to appeare and come betoꝛe him the Gratian Lords complaināts, and the Squire Alektor defendānt, to vnderſtand & iudge of the commotion and ſlaughter happened by their cauſe; in the aſſiſtance of all the Maiſtrates, Orders, and Eſtates of the Citie of Orbe and of the greater part of the people there aſſembled and gathered together by reaſon of the caſe ſo new, ſtrange, and of ſo terrible example. The two brothers Gratiāns clothed in long garments of mourning cullour, with viſages ſad and withered, either foꝛ verie ſorrowe, oꝛ els by artificial cunning of ſome ſulphurian ſmoke,

*For oftentimes an Hegers mournfull cheere,  
Through fained ſhewe dooth prone a laughter moere.*  
with ſhauen beaꝛdes; haireſ rent and toꝛne; imploꝛed Iuſtice againſt Alektor being there preſent, a ſtranger, a ſpie, a ſoyler of maidenly beds, a violatoꝛ of hoſpitalitie, a raptoꝛ of virginittie, a theefe, and breaker vp of noble houſes, a troubler of publique peace, and a bloodie murderer. Declaring that at the perſwaſion of their late deceaſſed ſiſter Noëmia Gratian, a gracious maiden (moꝛe peradventure than was expedient foꝛ him) vpon the recite of certaine valiant feates of Armes (vñknowing whether they were truely oꝛ falſely giuen out) they had received him into their houſe, alwaies held noble of all antiquittie, and eſteemed a houſe of honour. This fained and maſqued Gentleman, who vnder colour of a certaine courtlike ciuilitie,  
C wherein

wherein he seemed to haue been trained vp, and by the allurement of a certaine beautiful youth, in him by gifts of nature shining: had corrupted the good nurture & manners of their sister, being a simple and yong maiden, and the best esteemed of this age, and had tempted her honestie, euen vnto the entering into her priuie chamber at vnlawfull houres in the night, abiding there the whole night alone with her (wherby may be iudged þ rest): where, after that by reuelation of some domestical and faithfull seruants hee was discovered, by breaking vp the doores, he (by fraction of the hospital lodging villainously violated & polluted) was leapt downe through a windowe into the lower court, where againe hee hath committed many murders, aswell vpon the domestical seruants, friends, and familiers, come to their succour, as of their proper parents and alies; yea and that hee had wickedly and curiously slaine the yongest of the brothers Gracians: and for that cause their so amiable sister, by rage of furious loue had so lost her senses, that she was come miserablie to be slaine in his armes; neither was it knowne by whome, vntill by himselfe, who by holding her embraced, had slaine her, as it is very likely. And thereupon demanded iustice to be giuen them, aswel for the priuate interest of the persons of their brother, sister, parents, friends, and domesticall seruants, as also for publique example of other such like disturbers of their publique peace, stirers of ciuill discorde, and corrupters of good manners. Concluding him to be worthe of the most ignominious death that could be adiudged.

The most wise and iust Potentate Diocles hauing in great and attentive silence heard and vnderstood the action and complaint of the brothers Gracians, only with his left eare, and hauing alwaies held his right eare stopped with the palme of his left hand, vpon which he had still his head inclined, following the example of the adder, & subtiler serpent, who fearing the enchanted words of the charmer stoppeth her eare against the ground: euen so did this most  
wise

wise iudg, who had closed his right eare with his left hand vnder colour of resting his head, to the end hee might reserve it to heare the other partie. And for that cause turned himselfe on the other side, holding his left eare leaning vpon his right hand, and opening the other to heare the defendant: who, clothed in his apparrell which was brought vnto him (except his armes) with an assured and liberall countenance and with a seemely face and vpright bodie, (which already priuely had gotten him the fauor of all) with hardie speech he began his defence in this manner.

Equirable and iust Potentate, I knowe not if the order of worldly things confound themselves, & preposterously reuerse and turne to a contrarie disorder: when befoze your honor, I see my selfe innocent, & hauing receiued iniurie, (for which cause to mee belonged the complaint) am nevertheless arrested and criminally accused, by those who haue outraged mee: and who in my behalfe haue violated the holie right of hospitalitie: inforcing themselves (as much as in them lay) to haue murdered me in their owne house, wherto they had inuited me to lodge; and thereupon had slaine me, if iust God, my right, my good sworde, and mine impenetrable shield had not saued mee. They haue called me vnkowne stranger, for the which (that I may make my selfe knowne to the whole company) I giue you to vnderstand that I am Alector, borne of noble blood, sonne of the most renowned prince Franck-Gal, called the old Knight of the swimming and flying horse, sufficiently knowne through out all the world, and of my Lady Priscaraxe, Queene of Tartary: so that I am a noble man, and not an vnkowne stranger as they terme me, but a worldling and a Citizen of the worlde, and a Squire, wandering to seeke who may giue me the order of Knighthood, and to finde aduentures in all places, without counting my selfe a stranger in any noble house which is open to honest men: as they would be taken for & esteemed, in causing themselves

to be called the Gracians; who for token of graciousnes, haue adressed the statues of the three Graces in the entrie of their lodging, towards whome at the perillous assault which was made vpon mee thinking to saue my selfe, as with signes and tokens of Graces and inuiolable franchise, I found such grace, that I haue there receiued more than three hundred handie strokes, and many more of shot and stones; yea farre more fauorable were the hard stones sustenting and holding by the insensible Charites of Alabaster to mee, than those men who call themselves Gracians, hauing both sense and reason. For they fought with me to the death, and these defended mee and saued my life: wherefore I say, that the Gracians and their consozts are more hard and vngacious, than the statues of the Graces in Marble, that by their cruell impietie (themselves violated and polluted,) haue caused the innocent blood of their owne sister to be shed, and cruelly immolated and sacrificed betwene mine armes before the images of their Charites; who (in detestation and horroz of so abhominable a sacrifice,) seeme to turne their faces from seeing such an execrable sozfeit, as the murder of their fourth sister, the most gracious Noëmia, before their Diuinitie; and vnder the safegarde and libertie of their worshipfull and inuiolable images, traitterously transpeirced with a cursed arrowe; let flie from farre by a raskall, coward, wicked, and traitterous archer, whome (if I might knowe) I would neither pardon quick nor dead. And in this most evidently appeareth, the calumnious insimulation of mine accusers, who intending to lay vpon mee the murder of their most gracious Noëmia, slaine betwene mine armes with an arrowe: whereas I my selfe had none other offensive weapons, than mine onely sworde, wherewithall I would rather haue transpeirced mine owne heart, than to haue offended or harmed her. Protesting before you, þ for no other occasiõ, but only in hope to reuenge mine owne Noëmia, I doe here either defend my cause or life, & not for pleasure or desire

desire that I haue longer to liue in this world, desiring rather to bee with her, or where shee is, than here to languish after her being dead: but before I dye, cruellie to take reuenge vpon the traiterous murtherer, with the same shaft that hee pierced her noble heart, to the end I may carrie her agreeable newes of reuenge into the other world. But in that they accuse me to haue bin taken locked within the chamber of Noemia their sister, and that by breaking and manner of scaling I was leapt downe into the lower court by the window. In this I was neuer taken, nor in doubt to be taken: for being lodged in their house (the which for a certaine pleasure to them done, in all and by all they had left vnto mee, with all the goods that were therein) I did not esteeme the chamber of Noemia to be interdicted mee, wherein oftentimes I entred openly and not as a theefe or wicked person to bezell her substance or honoz, or to violate her bodie: but as a Gentleman, to whome no Ladie or Gentlewoman of honoz ought to refuse honest companie, vlesse that as a villaine hee had purchased the same with villanie; the which shall not bee found in mee: who neuer held speech nor did act which should displease her, neither had any dishonorable scandall nor sinister suspicion come thereof, if they themselues had not procured to defame their sister, and to finde occasion to depprue her of her dowrie by their insatiable conetousnes. For the which it is sufficient to be coniectured that they haue caused her to bee slaine in this tumult, by a traiterous shot of an vnknowne man of their side, who cannot be found. But if I see him I shall knowe him well enough. As touching the breaking by of any thing, not I, but they themselues did it, breaking violently the chamber doze, by proude disdain to knock thereat, or familiar calling to open it, and (as I beleene) to rob and scale mine armes from mee which are so faire and good, as in the end afterwards like cheeues they did; which neuertheles as yet I challenge of them and desire they may be sequestred and put into your custodie (O Lord

Diocles) vntill the end of iudgement, wherein if I bee adiudged to dye, neither my Lord and Father Franck-Gall, nor the hardie spirit of the black Knight Gallehalt, shall suffer peaceably to enioy. If I leaped downe at the window into the lower court, it was not for conscience of any euill deepe; which hether to I haue not committed, vppon the pfose of armes with the swoorde and shield (for as yet I am not Knight) against the two brothers and all others who dare presume to charge mee with villanie: neither yet by flying or feare of their assault, for I neuer had doubt of them, as full well I haue giuen them since to vnderstand: but onely by descending without ladder or fraction, with my hand set vppon the window easellie going downe, to giue way and place to their furious insolence and threating cries, and for shunning of committing any act of hostilitie in a house of hospitalitie: and also because I would not giue any dishonorable suspition to their sister, whose honor if I had not had in more recommendation than they (who haue brought it in question) without leaving the place, I had well defended their entrie, and haue sent them with their parents like insensible fooles. But hauing these two respects, I thought better to flake my force and hardines, and to giue place to their furie, than to fight with mine hostes, and giue scandall to their sister. And if I had found no impeachment in the court, no drop of bloud had been shed by me in their house. But you know (O iust Diocles) that it is permitted, yea and necessarie by the righteous lawe of nature, to repulse force by force, and violence by violence. Wherefore perceiuing my selfe excluded from all way of flying combat, and finding my selfe inuironed with a mightie companie of armed men who had swoone either my death or captiuitie (who am free and some of free and liberall conditio) and assailing mee on euerie side without mercie or grace, I retired my selfe towards the azile and sacred statues of the Charites and Graces, thinking there to finde grace, franchise and safetie.

tie. Wherefore, if in defending my bodie, some ouer rash persons haueaine vnder my trenching sword, I say that it is not I that haue slaine them, for I neuer had will thereto, and the iust lawe doth not iudge but voluntarie deedes: as for these, they themselues like furious wilde Bores haue rashlie come to bee slaine, and therefore of their owne voluntarie death I pleade my selfe innocent. To conclude, whereas they charge mee with violence and Rape, committed on the person of their sister: I answer it is so farre from trueth, as contrariwise their sister Noëmia being by the terrible and sauage Centaure rauished, and without hope of recouerie from being euer lost, I by valiance against violence haue brought her home safe and sounde; and so restored her to her brothers. Whereby if it were so that I had subtracted her to mee, and appropriated her person to my will, yet haue I not taken, but that which ought to bee mine by good conquest and right of warre, for that they lost her with ill keeping, and I got here againe from the monstrous Centaure, and therefore she should be mine by vniuersall right of people. And thus concluding, for mine absolution, I craue full deliuerance, and restitution of mine armes. Or otherwise, if I be found guiltie of death (which shall lesse grieue mee after the death of my most deere Noëmia) most instantly I beseech you (O Lord Diocles, and all you the assistants) that you will cause that murdering archer to bee sought and found out, that so traitterously hath slaine the innocent Noëmia; and after that you haue condemned him to cruell death (as reason and Justice require) to put him into my hands, that I may execute and take vengeance vpon him, to the ende my soule after her departure out of this bodie may carrie agreeable newes to the spirite of Noëmia, in witness of the constant loue, that in her life and after her death I haue borne her. And for faithfull ppoofe of my wordes spoken and alledged in my defence: let the domesticall

domesticall seruants euen vnto the torture, bee examined and asked, who kept her companie when she was rauished by the Centaure, and by mee deliuered out of his hands. Likewise let Arcana her familiar chamber maide, be examined, who to all her deedes and secrets was most priuie.

The defense of Alestor heard and vnderstood (which seemed not vnreasonable) the thoughts of the whole assistance by close fauor, accorded to his absolution and deliuerance. But the iust Iudge Diocles who beleueed not easely in simple words, by the aduise of the Counsel, caused Tharsides and Calestan (domesticall seruants in the house of the Gradians) to be sent for, who had been in the companie and conduct of Noëmia, & present at her rauishment: likewise Arcana her secret damosell was sent for, who appearing before the Potentate Diocles, were adiuured in the name and by the faith which they ought to Soueraigne Ioue, to tell truth of all that they knewe and had seene betwene Alestor and Noëmia, with threaten of death if they dissimuled any thing, or if they concealed or disguised the truth of the matter as it was. These poore seruile persons so adiuured, began to looke one vpon another without speaking word, either of them fearing in himselfe to vtter or conceal the thing, whereof they might be coargued by the other; untill Tharsides first tooke and addressed his speech to the Potentate, in this manner.

*A Narration of the Rauishment of Noëmia carried away by the sauage Centaure; of her reconerie by Alestor; the beginning of their secret loue in the den: and the continuance thereof till her death.*

## CAP. 3.

**M**<sup>Y</sup> LORD Diocles and most iust Potentate, in whose presence the most assured tremble, for reuerence of thy seuerer iudgement, which receiueth neither fauor,

fauor, flattery, nor lying. I protest puerly and entirely to be-  
 ter that which I know without conceale or dissimulation.  
 There are two moneths already past or there abouts, that  
 my Ladie Noemia deceased (whose Soule rest in peace)  
 was sent for by my Lady Callirhoa her cousen, to her castel  
 of the Greene-head, to accompanie, & passe the time with  
 her certaine daies, whiles my Lord Spathas her husband  
 was gone twelue iournies from thence toward an Augur,  
 beeing an ancient Hermit of a most strait life, and a Di-  
 uine man, resident about the hoyned rock, to inquire, and  
 knowe of this holy man, of certaine ordinarie and almost  
 daily praies and slaughters which were done in his lands  
 and woods; of persons and beastes either slaine, rauished,  
 or incurably lost, without knowing by whome, or whether  
 it were a Diuell, a sauage beast, or a man that committed  
 these outrages. For the bodies of those who were found  
 slaine, were stroken and pierced with arrowes, headed  
 with the venemous teeth of Dragons, or else marked and  
 stricken with round blowes without wound, which gaue  
 suspicion that they were shot or stroken downe by the hand  
 of a man. But when any man followed them who were  
 rauished, there could none other trace be founde but the fo-  
 ting of a horse so soone vanished into the thicknesse of the  
 wood, that those who pursued them oftentimes found  
 themselves lost. And for that cause my Lord Spathas was  
 gone towards this diuine Augur to vnderstand and heare  
 some certaine aduice of him. In the meane while my La-  
 die Noemia sent for by her Cousen Callirhoa with the  
 leaue of her Parents, and three brethren who had the  
 charge and soueraigne recommendation of her after the  
 death of her parents, went to the Greene-head accompa-  
 ned with Calestan and mee; of her bastard brother called  
 Floridas and this her waighting maide Arcana: and there  
 we carried three weekes with ioyfull cheere vntill the re-  
 courne of my Lord Spathas; who brought no other an-  
 swere from the wise wan, but this obscure probleme, after-

wards by him found, but ouer veritable.

*The cruell auisher is neither Man nor Beast;*

*Who of the snowie Hind shall shortly make conquest,*

*By killing of the Leopard, that sought her to defend,*

*And chasing of two Harts, who durst him not attend.*

*But there shall come a swife borne child, whose worthie force  
Shall her redeeme, and slay this monster sanz remorse.*

*And for his fact receive that flower as a prize:*

*Whereof shall shortly nfewe abundant plaints and cries.*

My Lord Spathas for that time vnderstood not this obscure  
answere, neuerthelesse he could get none other: wherevpon  
he returned as euill aduised as he went, albeit hee kept  
this enigme still in minde. Who interpreting the worde,  
and fearing least the euill should fall vpon his house, or vpon  
those who were there in, specially on his faire Cousin  
Noëmia (which he coniectured to be the snowie Hind) on  
the next morning (in an euill houre) sent vs towards  
Orbe. For in passing by the wood of Hazards, as wee  
rode cheerefullie one morning vnder the shadow of the  
great leaued trees, giuing eare to þ melodious tunes of the  
chirping birds, we heard a great hute like the trampling  
of a troupe of beastes approaching vs. And suddainely wee  
perceiued a most horrible monster of greatnesse, grosenes,  
& enormous hideur, who vnto the lower part of his belly  
had an humaine shape, rather Stantonian than natural, with  
a great hoarie head, brusking vp like the bussels of a wild  
Boye, with a visage fierce, and looks fearefull, his mouth  
opened, discovering his great teeth, his bodie and armes  
full of beynes covered with cleere haire, not much vnlike  
the silke made of a fleese. And the rest of his bodie in the  
forme of a great red horse, exceeding the common bignes  
of other horses, running, flinging, and leaping vpon foure  
horse legs strong and light, right towards vs, carrying a  
great massy Club hanging at his girdle made of a greene  
and crooked branch of hasell with his leaues, and a number  
of arrowes at his side, and a bowe in his hand, wherewith  
al

all hee let flie an arrowe, and flew the hoxse of Floridas, who feeling his hoxse to fall vnder him, readily set fote on ground, and hand to his weapon to defend his faire sister Noëmia (whom he loued most verrely) against this horrible monstrous Centaure, running forth right to rauish her. Wherefoze Floridas postposing his life to the health of his sister, came onely to him with his sword. But the Centaure gnawing with disputefull laughter drew out his grosse mace, and gaue him such a beaule stroke vpon the reines, that hee bwoled all his bones, and then trode him with his hoxsely fete till hee brake his hart: Seeing this, wee fled, abandoning my Ladie Noëmia, whome farre of (turning our selues) wee sawe rauished by the Centaure; who hauing mounted her vpon behinde him, was entred into the thicke wood. And after her, her Damosell Arcana running on fote with her haire about her eyes: for the Spule whereon she was mounted, being afraid of the Centaure (as a Spule is a phantasticall and vmbriagious beast) had throwne downe his charge, and by maine running, returned to the Castle of Greene-head from whence wee were departed. Whereupon after wee had lost the sight of my Ladie Noëmia; we came flying towards Orbe to declare vnto her friends this sorrowfull newes. And as for other things I knowe none, but that the next daie after at night we sawe her arriue, safe and sound, whom wee supposed to haue been vtterly lost; in the companie and conduct of a right faire Squire, whome you may behold here present. Who euer since hath remained in the house of the Lordes Gratiars, behauing himselfe most graciously towards all, and most louingly with my Ladie Noëmia; like a young Gentleman with a faire Gentlewoman. If there bee any other thing I knowe, let Arcana be asked, who ought to know moze: for as touching my attestation Calestan can beare me witnes.

Then arose Calestan affirming hee deyd to be so, adioynning therewithall that in flying, the Prophecie of the wise man

## The first part

came to his memoire to bee verified. For this monstrous Hippocentaure was neither man nor beast, but of double stature, ravishing and murthering: as for the snowie Hinde conquered, it was Noëmia, the Leopard (who is a beast, bastard to the Lyon and the Pardatide) was Floridas the bastard slaine; the two parts did flie, being then two seruants Tharsides and Calestan, who through feare had abandoned their dame by flight. But of the rest of the probleme, he protested to vnderstand nothing, as one not knowing the consequent effects; whereof Arcana may bee asked: Arcana then at the commandement of the Iudge arose, and protesting by her faith to repoze the trueth vpon paine of her life began as followeth.

All that which Tharsides and Calestan haue related is according to trueth and veritie (my Lord Diocles): after whose flight and my Spules, I being on foote, knewe not what better to do than by extreame dolor, which brought my desperation of life, to runne after my Lady Noëmia, whome my soule could not abandone: in following the trace of the Centaure by an vnknowne way which I sawe him hold, in crying and lamenting so high, that all the wood rang, & the only Echo filled mine eares, who with mee seemed to bewaile the misfortune of my Ladie Noëmia. At my hautie cries & clamors in the wood, I met with a right sayre, yong and braue Esquire (which was Alestor whom you see present before you) mounted vpon a goodly Courser, who seeing mee so to run halfe out of my wits, demanded the cause of my dolor; which when he had vnderstode, he required me to conduct him to the place where I had seene this monster, saying that he would deliuer my Lady or else there die the death. I comforted with this promise, in so much that I seemed to be as light as a hinde, ran before towards the thicke of the wood, whereinto I sawe this monstrous Centaure enter, and the Squire followed mee a gallop: vntill at length wee perceiued the Centaure hauing discharged his pray, and training her by  
 foze

force into the hollowe of a high Rock, environed with xv.  
 great Oakes right thick and leaue. Alector seeing him,  
 cried from farre: leaue that Haideu thou byforned mon-  
 ster and addresse thy selfe to me, who will chasten thee for  
 thine outrage. The Hippocentaure hearing and seeing  
 him come with bydle losed and the sword in his hand, let  
 flie at him an arrowe wherewithall hee had peirced him  
 through if he had not been couered with his impenetrable  
 shield. Wherefore fearing least his horse should be flaine,  
 set foote on ground, and addressed himselfe to the monster  
 with merucilous hardines: wherent the Centaure being a-  
 gass, babled against him certaine barbarous and sauage  
 speeches of furious threating, and gaue him such a  
 waightie blowe with his Club, that made Alector (who  
 receiued it vpon his shield) to bowe his knee: but hastily  
 getting vp againe, hee restored it him so fiercely with a  
 blowe of his sword, so rudely set vpon his humaine hanch,  
 which was his horsesp shoulder that hee discovered his si-  
 newes with great dolor and effusion of blood: wherewith  
 the monster cast forth a crie so hidious that all the wood  
 rang of it, and the wilde beasts for feare ran to hide them-  
 selues; and after that lift vp his massie Club, and let driue  
 a lurdie blow sufficient to fell an Elephant. But Alector  
 both light and nimble, easilie shunned his great stroake  
 which fell in vaine, and so rudely, that the Centaure there-  
 withall had his arme and hand astonned, so as with great  
 paine could hee lift vp his massie Club any more. The  
 which Alector perceiuing, with his good sword cut off  
 one of his hands hard by the ioynt, which fell to the ground  
 with his massie Club, which caused the Centaure to cast  
 forth a more horrible crie than before: and seeing himselfe  
 disarmed and dismembred, with the feare which hee had of  
 the shining sword of Alector, turned his hinder horsesp  
 parts, perking out such strokes that the aire seemed to  
 sparkle with fire. But the valiant Esquire prompt and  
 quick to turne himselfe, shunning alwaies the blowes; or

## The first part

else bearing off with his shield the furious perkes of his  
 heeles, stroke him ouerthwart in his perkings with such  
 a cutting blowe, that notwithstanding the hardnes of his  
 skin, and bruski'd haire, he cut a sunder the sinewes of  
 his leggs euen to the discoverie of his bones; which as yet  
 were whole. Which the Centaure dolefullie feeling, tur-  
 ned againe his face, and with great ire lept upon Alecto-  
 r, thinking to haue beaten him downe with his forefeete.  
 But the gentle Squire seeing so faire a marke, forgot not  
 himselfe, but with a thrust into his horsely breast pierced  
 vnto his humaine heart. And so this byforned monster  
 beeing stroken to death, fell downe to the earth with all  
 his foure feete, cumbling in his black blood, and giuing vp  
 his last crie, not altogether in humaine voice, nor altoge-  
 ther in horsly gneyng, but mixed with both, like a man  
 gnaying, or like a horse brutally speaking, vntill such time  
 as hee was cleane dead: and at that instant the Heauens  
 began so to powre with Lightning, Thunder, and great  
 Raines (which as I thinke were the Diuels carping a-  
 waie the soule of this monster) that necessitie constrained  
 my Ladie Noëmia and mee, at the perswasion and assu-  
 rance of Alecto to retire our selues into the hollow of the  
 Rock which was the habitation of the Centaure, where  
 we entred in not without great feare, agast at the meruei-  
 lous combat, and of the hardines and prowesse of the vali-  
 ant Squire who comforted and assured vs right humaine-  
 ly. And there within we found much Venison, and diuers  
 frutes of the wood, which wee vsed that night for the pre-  
 sent necessitie. And whiles they were eating, my Ladie  
 Noëmia (in whose heart loue had already taken place by  
 regarde and admiration of the beautie, hardines, prowesse  
 and graciousnes of this yong Esquire, whome she beheld  
 with great admiration by the light of a most meruailous  
 scabberd of his sworde which hee caried, so cleere in the  
 night and in an obscure place, that it gaue so much light  
 as a flaming byand;) demaunded him, what good ad-  
 uenture

uenture had brought him so happellie for his deliuerance :  
My faire Ladie saide Alector (who on his part was no  
lesse attaint with the grace and beautie of Noëmia, than  
shee of his) I knowe not well by what way I am come  
hether, moze to my happines than your owne : but this I  
am certaine, that either by some Hyperborean windr, or  
spirite, I haue been since one moneth past, rauished vp  
on the Septentrionall Seas from the top of the wings  
of Durat Hippopotame the great swimming and flying  
horse of my Father Franck-Gall, and carried by him ouer  
Lands and Seas by many iournies, to the great discom-  
fozt and sorowe of my said Father, whome I knowe  
searcheth mee throughout the Worlde, vntill at length  
this windie spirite repored mee in a faire Garden of a  
Castle not farre from hence : where a young Damosell  
like you (but not so faire, and somewhat moze aged) found  
me, and vnderstanding my name, mounted mee on horse-  
back, vppon that condition that I should followe you vnto  
this wood, and giue you aide if you needed the same.  
For an olde Witch the same morning had told her, that  
if you were not recouered by Alector, you would be vtterly  
lost. And that the first man which shee found called by my  
name, shee should without delay send after you. Now  
thus it is, that I was no sooner repored in the Garden,  
but the Spirite who had carried mee about so farre, at  
his departure seemed to say to mee after a whispering  
manner in my left eare, entring into my braines these  
words following.

*Alector rise, and goe to saue the snowie Hinde (to finde;  
From monsters hands, then trudge Franck-Gall thy fire  
Who doth thee seek, on lofty seas, ytoft with many a wind.*

And thereupon entered into the Garden a right godly La-  
die, faire, yong and of great grace, but notwithstanding soz-  
rowfull, and lamenting her owne Cousen Noëmia, lately  
departed from the Castle of Greene-head, (for so was the  
place named fro whence I came) for the words which she  
old

old witch had told her. This yong dame thinking her selfe to be alone and vnprouided, finding me in the garden which was closed on euerie side with high walles beyond the compasse of a ladder, was not a little abashed: but after assuring her selfe demanded of me, who had let me in? What I was? And what I would haue. And I answered, I could not tell, Alecto, a horse. She hearing this name of Alecto, without demanding me other thing, led me into þe Escurie & gaue me leaue to chuse þe horse which pleased me best, vpon the foresaid conditions. The which most agreeably accepted, I chose this faire apple grey which you see, (now had he because of the tempest put his horse vnder couert amongst the trees, which Noemia and I incontinently knewe to bee the horse of my Lord Spathas. And wee vnderstode that shee who sent him after vs, was my Lady Callirhoa of the castle of Greene-head.) Continuing than his purpose, I chose (quoth hee) this faire apple grey who presently was saddled and bridled for mee, and whiles that hee was making readie, the Ladie of the Castle aduertised mee of a certaine monster. Thus being mounted, with leaue taken of the Ladie; I promised to accomplish her commaundement. And vpon this horse euer since from that place, (for my former iournies I could neither marke nor know, no more than the waie which the bird maketh in the aire, the serpent on the ground, or the ship on the sea) yea on this horse haue I been brought hether without finding any man by the waie, or creature of whome I might aske newes of you, which I desired to knowe: but onely that I met a little mule fearefull and vnbridled, which fled through the wood right towards the castle, who notwithstanding at the sight of my horse staid a little and asked him (as I thinke) in the Caballistic language some newes of you. But the phantasticall mule in his mulike speech answered Hyn ha (I know not what it is) and sodainely departed, running with bridle abated towards the Castle from whence I was come: which gaue

gane me suspicion that some trouble was happened vnto you, and for that cause I hastned, vntill by the crie of your Gentlewoman I turned the bytyle, and by her hauing vnderstood your trouble, came presently to your succor, to accomplish my promise, where I haue done mine endeuor as you your selfe haue seene.

You haue done so much (quoth my Ladie Noëmia, who alwaies had her eyes fastened vpon him in speaking) you haue done so much and so valiently (O noble Squire, deliverer of a rauished maiden) that I shall finde my selfe eternally bound to you: yea I my selfe, my brothers, and all their Gracian familie, confessing for this first & ouer little gratuitie towards you, that I haue neither in nor without me, a thing worthy and sufficient to recompence your merite. What is your name, Madame (quoth Alector)? My name (quoth shee) is Noëmia. Noëmia, (quoth hee) whosoever hath giuen you this name, hath not failed conveniently and well to call you: for truely Noëmia is as much to say, as faire: and most faire are you, yea and more gracious. And for that you alledge not to haue sufficient to recompence the pleasure and seruice which I haue done: not for this (which I confesse to be little or nothing in respect of your dignitie) but for all the seruices and honors which I desire and pretend to do for you in time to come, and for the great and vnspeakeable loue which I beare towards you, I require you Ladie Noëmia, and demand in recompence, a little of that which aboundeth in you, that is of grace, vertue, mutuall and irreuocable loue.

*For, to be lou'd, and eke to loue,*

*The Gods you sent from Heauen aboue.*

And this is the recompence which I desire, the which I pray you not to refuse, vnlesse you will see my bloud mingled with the bloud of this Centaure: whereof perhaps you may afterwards haue so much sorowe for the losse of  
C
so

so loyalla friend, as presently you haue ioye of the slaughter of your rauishing enimie.

The Ladie Noëmia as yet yong and simple, & one who neuer had heard so much of loue, at the words of this faire yong Squire, found her selfe cleane changed, moued, and chaied with the heates which she had neuer before felt; and with trembling words answered him thus; My faire friend, albeit hethereto I haue neuer felt nor knowen what loue should be, whereof so much speach proceedeth: neuertheless now (I knowe not by what newe transmutation) I feele my self so changed, inflamed, and affectioned towards you, (I knowe not whether it be that which we call Loue or no) that I cannot wil but what you will: nor haue pleasure or contentment in other but you; yea, as though I were wholly transformed into you: whereby I esteeme it the least dutie which I can or would do for you, to loue you who loue me, and hath saued my life. Wherefore with all my heart I graunt you my loue, wherein none other shall haue place during my life: yours I am by god right, & by your conquest; my bodie and my life is in your power, and mine honour in your hands: which like a noble and franke Gentleman (as you are) I beseech you to saue.

Alector so ioyfull as might be, thanked her right affectionally, laying on her kisses vpon kisses, passing from the mouth to the hart, and (as the common saying is, fire goeth into the ouen through the mouth) enflaming more and more the sparkles of this secret fire, laid together by pleasant couching with the hand, lightened with the winde of gracious sighings, and from time to time reuened & sprinkled with the water of teares, distilling from their two hearts, linked in the presse of loue. In such sort, that by contemplation of that sweetnesse, (to tell the truth of that which I haue sworne) it caused the water stande in mine eyes, and through sorrow of being alone, I laid me down to sleepe vpon a bed of leaues vncill the morning.

And

And therefore, as I would not know anie thing of that which passed betwene them, so doe I know nothing: but that in my sleepe (I know not whether I dreamed or not) mee thought I hearde certaine swete complaints of my Ladie, entermixt with ioy; whereupon willing to arise and to goe towards her, she commanded me to sleepe and take my rest: which willingly I did till the next morning, that the Sunne was already high, and shined into the Cane; and at that instant rising, I behelde this couple of faire yong persons, which the Sunne discovered, lying face to face, and halfe embraced vpon a great bed of mosse, which was (as I suppose) the Centaures bed. And as I behelde with great pleasure my Ladie Noëmia, how shee had gotten a newe and higher colour than her naturall whitenesse, by her morning sleepe. The horse who had no more meate, began to gnaw verie loud, so that Alector leapt vp, and girded him with his sword and shield, which were nere him: and my Ladie Noëmia arose also, who beholding me, became all redde and shamefast, for hauing (as I thinke) slept so long.

Then Alector, after that hee had giuen her the Good morrowe, with a gracious accolade and amorous kisse, mounted vpon his horse, setting her before him, as light as a yong Goate, and I mounted behinde him vpon the strong grey nagge, on whome these three yong bodies full of youthful corage, weighed no more than one onlie man: and so wee returned towards the way to Orbe, where by the way wee found the dead bodie of Floridas, which wee mounted vpon the bzaunches of a tree, to the ende the Molues and other sauage beasts should not deuoure it, & his gelding feeding with the hackney of my Ladie: vpon whom she mounted, and I on the gelding of Floridas, and so returned wee to Orbe into the Gracians house, where wee founde the whole householde all troubled and vexed with sorowe, for the death of Floridas and for the losse of

my Ladie Noëmia : whom they accounted for certaine lost, and my selfe with her which was the lesser damage. Whereupon they seeing vs retorne whole and sound, at the first they were abashed, but their abashment was soon turned into ioye and gratulation, chiefly towards Alestor of whome they had by me vnderstood the noblesse, valure, prowesse, and honestie, the desperat rescue of their sister, and the slaughter of the monstrous Centaure. Whereof to be moze certaine they sent to fetch the bodie of Floridas their bastard brother, to the end he might be honozably buried (as afterwards they did) and the bodie of the Centaure to haue p<sup>ro</sup>ofe of my saying, as also for pleasure of the sight and vengeance. The which byformed body was brought in a chariot with foure wheeles and foure horses, so great, so monstrous, and so to bee wondred at, that the beastes of the wood durst not approach, and the men of the towne scarce behold. The which monster after they had made shewe thereof to all the people wondering thereat, they caused it to bee fied, and the skin to bee stuffed with many swæte and drie herbes, and set it with the foresaide massie Club vpon one of the gates of the house, where it seemeth to be yet aliue, and to defend the entrie, with looks so hidious and threathning, that as yet may be seene : to the great honoz & praise of the vanquisher that hath destroyed such a Diuell, the which is Alestor here present: to whom the brothers Gracians in acknowledge of benefit done to their sister, offered and abandoned their house and all that was therein : which Alestor accepted most agréably for the loue of my Lady Noëmia, whom he loued right tenderlie, and whome oftentimes hee came to visit, cherish, and make honest loue, without villanie, dishonoz, or passing (to my knowledge) the girdle. If there bee any other forseit, either true, or by false accusation intended, whereby so much euill hath p<sup>ro</sup>ceded, I protest to knowe no moze than that which I haue already spoken. And therewith all she bidd her peace.

*Consultation*

*Consultation vpon the criminall processe of Alektor. The  
commandement of the Oracle by the Archier. The  
slaughter of the Prophet Calliste, which was cause of the  
denouring Serpent in the Theatre. Capitall sentence pre-  
nounced vpon Alektor, that he should be deliuered to the  
Serpent.*

CAP. 4.



Diocles after he had paused a while  
vpon all these foresaid things, al-  
ledged, and approued, retired him-  
selfe into the Counsell chamber;  
with the principall of the bench,  
where the matter was diuerslie  
discoursed, some consenting to the  
absolution of Alektor, as one that  
was not conuicted of any other  
crime than of amorous youth, and of worthy act in defence  
of his bodie: others, chiefly the old men, and such as had  
daughters marriageable in their houses; and to whom as-  
much hong in their eye, saide that it was an euill example  
against good manners, and a great presumption of dome-  
sticall rape, deseruing (at the least) punishment, if they did  
but procede according to his owne confession. And were  
it but the homicide of so many men slaine by contumace  
rebellion of not obeying to Iustice, hee was culpable of  
death. But other vnwilling to condemne him to death,  
gaue sentence that he should be chastened with some igno-  
minious and corporall paine, with banishment. And as  
these diuers opinions were in question and the Judge Di-  
ocles waying the one w the other, behold one of the Mini-  
sters of the temple, Deacon to the Archier, that is to say to  
the chiefe Priest and Prince of the Priests of Ioue his  
temple, the great and soueraigne God of Orbe, came from  
the said Archier named in his proper name Croniel; to  
speake secretly to the Potentate Diocles. Which done he

sodainlie departed: for it is not permitted to such holy men,  
 to assist in capitall iudgement. The Deacon being depar-  
 ted, Diocles spake to those of the Bench, and said; My  
 Lords, the Archier of the Temple of Ioue, the holie man  
 Croniel hath sent me word presently, that he by reuelati-  
 on which is come to him this last night in watching and  
 praying in the Temple for the prosperous estate of our  
 Common wealth, was commanded by an Angell of So-  
 ueraine Ioue, to aduertise and defend vs from giuing ca-  
 pitall sentence vppon this pong straunger, other than that  
 which is ordeyned by Ioue himself; that is, to put him in-  
 to the Theatre of the Sands, onelie with his shield, sword,  
 and an arrow without a bow, to fight with the great Ser-  
 pent of the Sands, so to make proofe of his innocencie if he  
 banquish, or to suffer pain for his offence if he be overcome.  
 This diuine sentence was allowed of all, yea of the most  
 rigorous, who thought hee should neuer escape the force,  
 teeth, and venom of the Serpent, and so should he giue plea-  
 sure to the people, and spare one of their owne men: the  
 most iust hoping neuerthelesse, that he who had discomfi-  
 ted the bisformed Centaure would deale well enough with  
 the Serpent, and so deliuer the Theatre and Towne of a  
 cruell beast, and inward enimie.

Now is it to be vnderstood that certain yeres before the  
 Archier Croniel, there was in the Temple another Ar-  
 chier called Calliste, a man of great vertue, holie, and a  
 Prophet; who in the festiuall dayes when the people as-  
 sembled themselves at the spectacles in the Theatre or at  
 the Sands, he would come into the mids of the people, and  
 openlie and eagerlie repproue them of their vsuall vices,  
 and propheticie vnto them, that of the iust bloud shed, the  
 earth should bring forth a terrible and cruell reuenger, who  
 should deuour their entrailles, vntill such time as the twice  
 borne childe comming from towards the Pol-Artick, de-  
 liuered them thereof. Thus did this holie man goe crying  
 through the Theatre and the Sands, so as he hindred the  
 plaies,

plaies, comedies, spectacles, and other publique pastimes : inſomuch that one day , the people prouoked by commotion and populous furie, with caſting of ſtones chaſed him vnder a gutter or ſinke of the Theater, and therein ſtoned him, leauing his bodie in the filch : which notwithstanding the next day (after the populous furie paſſed) was drawen out by the Miniſters of the Temple, and honorably buried in the entrie of the Gutter where he was ſlaine, in a ſepulcher of blacke marble highlie created, with his Prophecie written therein : which ſtopped by the mouth of the gutter. Neuertheles, it did not ſo cloſe the murder of this holie man, but within one yere and a day after, an horrible reuenge of that fact publiquely appeared : for as the people in great multitudes were aſſembled to behold the dancing of an Elephant, behold from betwene the gutter ſtones & the ſepulcher, iſſued out a moſt horrible ſerpent, who ſpying vpon the people, with his taile & throte deſtroyed a great number, the reſidue with terrible feare running out of the Theatre : which thing euerie 3. day hee vſed to execute on the people, who by no engine or humane force could finde remedie, yea he would ſpoyle them in their houſes : untill at length they were aduiſed euerie weeke to giue him 2. capitall offenders, whom preſently he would carrie into the gutter, and hold himſelfe therewith content. Then vnderſtood the people that the Prophecie of the Archier Calliſte was partly fulfilled, but not wholly at an end.

Two daies after the proceſſe of Alector, was the time to giue the Serpent his praye : wherefore the great Potentate Diocles comming out of the Counſell, & the Benchers ſtanding about him, and he himſelfe ſet in the iuſtice ſeate, & Alector being preſented vnto him, thus pronounced ſentence ; The preſent appointed cauſe in the criminall accuſation of the Gratians againſt Alector, being obſcure, and doubtfull aſwell on the one part, as the other, to the iudgement of men, is now by heauenly Oracle ſent to the diuine iudgement who ſhall condemne his fault by death

„ death or shewe his innocencie by victorie; at the prooffe of  
 „ combat against the Auenger Serpent of the Theatre in  
 „ the plaine of the Sands, onely with his sword, shield, and  
 „ an arrowe without a bowe. Whereunto wee with sende  
 him within thre daies at the furthest. This sentence pro-  
 nounced, was right well allowed and receiued of all the as-  
 sistance (who demaunded not the death of this pong Es-  
 quire, but boze him secret fauor, in hope of some meruei-  
 lous aduenture of the combat, as it came after to passe)  
 as also of the two parties. For the Gracians thought be-  
 rely that their offendor should incontinently be swallowed  
 by of the most horrible Serpent, who onely with his vene-  
 mous breath did slaie those who approached him. Alector  
 on the other side trusting in his hardines, legeritie; and  
 prowesse, demaunded nothing but that the third day were  
 come, and enquired after if his sword and shield were safe.  
 To whome it was answered, that hee should not care, but  
 that they should bee deliuered him the day of the Combat.  
 Therewithall he wonderfullie reioyced, and thanked the  
 Potentate of his clemencie, to the great abashment of all  
 the people, who merueiled to see him so assured in such a  
 mortall and present perill. And so by commaundement he  
 was caried back to the lodging of the Captaine Palatine  
 to be kept in his garde, where without ceasing he lamen-  
 ted his Ladie Noëmia, speaking to her as though she had  
 been present, and promising her reuenge. And in this his  
 great complaint which euerie night from thre houres to  
 thre houres hee awaked, hee woulde crie out with a loude  
 voice O Noëmia, O Noëmia, O Noëmia! and reclay-  
 ming incessantly the Sunne to aduance the day and time  
 of his Combat against the Serpent, wherof his care was  
 so small, as the thought was great how to finde out the  
 murthering Archer of his Noëmia; so remained hee there  
 for that time. During the which, the soueraigne and most  
 iust Judge Diocles caused diligent and secret enquirie to  
 be made, to knowe who it was, which in that tumult shot  
 the

the arrowe, wherewith the faire, gracious, and vertuous Noëmia was so accursedlie slaine: wherewith, all in generall were sad and sorrowfull. For in the death of this noble Maiden, was buried the flower of beautie, and grace of all the Maidens of the Citie of Orbe: for the which cause she was deplored, bewailed and lamented in common duell, all the people with one voyce crying vengeance and penall iustice of the murtherer. But for all the diligent enquire that could be made, nothing could be found, saving a light presumption and suspicion of a yong springall called Coraeton, who had sometime greatlie wooed her, and of her had gotten nought but a conquest of refusall, for the vicious nature which abounded in him: but this presumption was not sufficient, chieflie because at her burying, this gallant mourned aboue all the rest: insomuch that with force of teares, he washed away all suspicion. The Iudge perceiuing he could finde no other thing, went himselfe in person, (before shee was permitted to be buried) to see the bodie of the faire Noëmia, lying (before the pillar of the 3. Charites) with such grace (albeit dead) that shee seemed sweetelie to sleepe, moze whiter than her snowie garments purplested in bloud: wherewithall hee himselfe (being a most severe man) was moued to teares, and commanded the bloudie arrowe to be deliuered him, the which after hee had beheld it, lift it vp aloft, demanding if no man knew it: but no answer would be giuen. And lifting vp his eyes, he beheld the Charites of alabastr, and saw that from their stonie eyes distilled aboundance of teares, lamenting the death of their fourth sister: which he shewed vnto the people, who of such a miracle began to weepe, and crie vengeance for the fact. And amongst these enterprises, Diocles aduised betwene the hands of two Charites a little scroll, rowled vp, the which hee secretlie tooke without the knowledge of anie man, and after he had read it, he closed it in his hand with the arrowe, and retired to his lodging, giuing leaue to burie the dead bodie, which in open mourn-

f

ing

ing was entered before the statues of the 3. Graces, with the enscription of the Epitaph, as hath been before declared. And the sepulcher was covered with flowers and perfumes, strowed by the people in lamentation of the faire Noëmia.

*The reuelation by night to Croniel Archier. The arrivall of Franc-Gal. The foretelling of the blacke Bird. The mortall perrill of the Archier by a Lionnesse, slaine by Franc-Gall. The reincountrie and assemblie of the Archier and Franc-Gall, with their deplorations.*

## C A P. 5.



**I**N the evening of that selfe same day, the Archier Croniel being in the Temple at his nocturnall meditations, as euerie night before he was accustomed to doe: he receiued a certaine inward intelligence, that the next daye after none he should goe towards the sea side, by keeping the way of the sepulcher of Thanais, and that hard by hee should finde a man who should saue his life, him he should bring & lodge in his house, and of him should he learne much. Croniel the next morning after sacrifice and dinner, tooke his bowe and quiter, to passe the time at shooting & chasling of beasts and birds in the field: (for seldome or neuer went he to the plaies at the Theatre, by the occasion of his predecessors) and taking with him some victualls and a little wine (if so he should neede it) and so set forthwards on the way toward the sea by the way of *Portuna*, to seeke out the beasts and birds of the field.

Now the same morning was arrived at the next Port the

the magnanimous Prince Franc-Gal Dyfir Macrobe, & his men vpon a great Hippopotame, being a huge & merueilous sea horse, swimming and flying vpon the waters and flouds, with the sette of Polype and wings called Durat. This Franc-Gall through seas and lands went seeking his sonne Alector, who on the Septentrion seas was rauished and carried from him by a horrible wind, he knew not whether, and (by fortune hauing taken land at the next haucn) with his onely page, held the high way to the great Citie of Orbe, where appeared to him a blacke bird, like a rauen, but somewhat of lesser bodie, with beacke and claes red; who flying befoze him from tree to tree seemed to sing in humane voyce these words following.

The whole  
proces here  
of is show-  
en in the 21  
cap.

*Come with me, come, come, come,  
thou shalt goe to the Sands:  
Where thou shalt finde thy Sonne,  
come with me, come, come, come,  
For I a Prophet am  
whom thou no more shalt see,  
Come with me, come, come, come,  
thou shalt goe to the Sands.*

Franc-Gall hearkening to her and taking her song for an Augurie, followed her alwaies vntil she was flowne berie farre off, and reposed her selfe vpon a high tree attending him. But the Archier Croniel who was vnder the tree, seeing the foule at a faire aduantage, bent his bow, thinking to let flie an arrowe to haue killed her: but as hee was taking his marke with eager leuelling, behold a Lionesse issued out of an olde ruined caue which was hard by (where she nourished her yong) and faire and softlie came stealing to assaile the poore Archier, who gaue no heed at all sauing to his aforesaid marke: and therewithal had strangled and carried him to her yong, had not Franc-Gal (who was not farre off) presently aduanced himselfe to the succour of the

poore Archier with his sword in his hand, and the shield of azure with the Sonne of golde in readinesse. The Beast hearing the byrte of the sounding harnesse (for Franc-Gal was armed) and the great noyse which he made in crying, turned fiercelie against him, and cast her mightie pawes vpon his shield, with such a force that shee plucked it out of his hand: but Franc-Gal so puissant as a Giant, gaue her ouerthwart the sides such a stroke with his sword, that he cut her bodie in two peeces; wherewithall the beast dying gaue out such an horrible crye that two of her whelpes (so yong that scarce they could creepe) issued out of the ruined caue, crying after their Dam. Franc-Gal seeing them said that of an euill beast no yong ought to be left, and for that cause slewe them both, and in terrour of others (after the manner of Aphricke) hung them by by the tailed vpon a tree, with the moities of the bodie of their Dam, to the great astonishing of the Archier: who being releued out of the sodaine feare which he had by reason of the Beastes clawes, greatlie meruailed of this feadie, sodaine, and vnloked for helpe and succour, and of the valiauncie of this faire olde man: for the which he thanked him right heartelie, knowing for a certaine, that it was hee which by the nightlie reuelation was showed him, should saue his life. And for that cause demaunded him, what good fortune had brought him so happely to his rescue from the death, and what hee sought in those Countreyes? (for by his personage, armes and habit, he knew him to be a stranger) and promising him all aide and succour, in any thing wherein he might serue him.

I am come hether (quoth Franc-Gal) by following the augurie of a Bird, prognosticating to me, that shee would conduct me to the Sands at Orbe: but thou, by seeking to kil her, hast caused me to lose her; not regarding or taking heed thy selfe of the fierce and savage beast which was behinde readie to deuoure thee, whiles thou soughtest to entrap and slay my guide: which may be an example, that  
often

oftentimes he which is a murderer in will, is murdered himselfe in deede, the taker taken, and the ender brought to an ende.

It is truth (quoth the Archier) and I acknowledge it, and I confesse that without thy succour I had been dead: for the which most heartellie I thanke thee; and in recompence of chasing away thy Birde which conducted thee, I promise thee by the faith of an honest mā, to lead thee whether thou wouldst goe, and to aide thee in what I maye, tell mee onelie whether thou meanest to goe. I pretende (quoth Franc-Gall) to goe to the Sands at Orbe, there to finde my faire and pong sonne Alector, being wel brought up, and a valiant Squire: whom the winde rauished and transported from me being vppon the Septentrion seas, whom I shall neuer see againe, (alas) as the song of this auguring Bird hath presaged me. Notwithstanding without him, I neither can nor wil liue anie longer; and therefore will Franc-Gall cast out great sighes from the bottom of his heart) for with him he hath carried away my soule & life, as I haue seene in my dreame in Scythia vpon the Lyons saignes. O faire childe! O meruallous infant! fatalle engendered, twice bozne, supernaturallie nourished, growen vp before the time, wise before age, strong above nature, hardy beyond humanitie, aduenturouslie fortunèd, feared of the wicked, beloued of the good, yea of spirites: who by iealouzie (as I thinke) haue rauished and carried thee I knowe not whether. Must I for so small and brieue a time of enioying the presence of thine amiable person; so long suffer the absence of thee, that after my long and tedious peregrination heretofore spent, I must nowe againe trauesse the world to seek thee, in feare and doubt whether euer to finde thee? And at this word, the bloudie teares departing from the depth of his heart interrupted his speech, insomuch that he remained a little space in silence, and afterwards to begin his dolefull speech againe in this manner, turning himselfe to the Archier. And therefore my

## The first part

friend Archier, I tell thee this, that I haue lost a Sonne called Alestor, engendred of Priscaraxe Queene of Tartarie, one of the wisest and fairest Dames vnder the Heavens of the Worlde; whom I loue, & desire to see againe, (for I haue not seene her in moe than eight yeres) neither is it lawfull for me to returne (by reason of an othe which I haue taken befoze her) without bringing her sonne made Knight, either by my hand, or by the hand of some other. For the accomplishing whereof I haue already assayed, but alwaies failed, yea and haue found my selfe impotent and forlorne of my members and tongue in going about it: the cause thereof I cannot imagine, vlesse the Fates haue ordeined that his Knighthood shall bee giuen him by some other hand and not by mine, the soueraigne graunt it may be of a better.

God grant it (quoth the Archier) but what are these Fates and Destinies whereof thou speakest: are they a-  
nie puillances of Fortune? (which is nothing as I thinke)  
No, no (quoth Franc-Gall) I call the inflexible and im-  
mutable ordinances of souereigne God that ruleth al with  
his prouidence, Fates. It is right well spoken, and most  
worthelie vnderstood (quoth the Archier) and so thou seest  
it is not the will ordeined by the Souereigne that he shall  
be made Knight by thy hand, it is to be vnderstood, that it  
is reserved for a better, without contrarying or being an-  
grie therewith,

No more doe I quoth Franc-Gall, neither am I sorrow-  
full, but for that I cannot finde my Sonne Alestor, with-  
out whom I cannot returne to the Queene Priscaraxe his  
mother, neither can hee without mee by sworne promise,  
which I doubt mee can neuer be accomplished of either of  
vs, as my heart giueth me; remembzing the presages, ora-  
cles, visions and dreames, which haue giuen me such sig-  
nificating. And hereupon, with greuous sighing he helde  
his peace. Which caused the Archier to imagine, that the  
faire Esquier, which hee vnderstood was condemned to  
fight

fight with the Serpent of the Sands, might well bee the Sonne, which this faire olde man went searching and sorrowing for: and therefore he said vnto him; Thou strange man console thy spirit, for I hope to shewe thee to morrowe him whom thou demandest. Then Franc-Gall reuolving out of his deep thought, cast out a great sigh saying; And shall I then finde Alector caried away by the winds, which can not be folowed? Yea: but I shall neuer see him againe, for which I must die and ende my peregrination, rendring the fire, the light, and vigoꝝ of my life, to him of whom I haue receiued it, by a termination of life which is called death, most terrible and fearefull of all things: the which is neere and imminent to me, as I see and perceiue in my selfe. For to euerie man is giuen diuinelie to foresee that which is to come, chieflie when he approacheth to the ende of his life, when the spirit is more nigh himselfe, and lesse wrapped in terrestriall things, whereby hee seeth and vnderstandeth more clerrelie and purelie: for such is the wil of the diuine pꝛouidence, to the ende man be not taken vnprouided, and die beaustlie.

Art thou then God quoth the Archier, to knowe the things which are to come? God I am not quoth hee, but man, to whom God hath giuen long life, experience, science of the starres, interpretation of auguries, and knowledge of my nigh ende, as the diuine Fates haue ordeined, my spirite prognosticated, the oracles foreshowen me, and the Prophecies foꝛetolde me. What other thing did the dreame of my heart caried away by the flying Basilisque pꝛefage me? the oracle of the marinall man Proteus, foꝛetelling my departure without returne: the vision of the wicked crowe at Tangut? of the stockdove? of the crane? and of the vultur? the rauen resting vpon my head? the mortall threatning of the spirit of Gallehault, & the song of this last blacke bird? Now see I wel then my fatal howre to be instant, and that I must away: let vs therefore, O Archier my friend, be going; and conduct me according

to thy promise, to the Sands of Orbe, where I shall finde my life, my death, or both. And so they put themselves vpon the way, the page of Franc-Gall following them. And in going, the Archier, who (by signes and coniectures, but chieflie by the nightly reuelation, and diuine commaundement to come and finde this stranger, preseruer of his life) knewe well the next day to shoue him the faire Squire, combattoz of the Serpent, & to present him for his sonne, that he might knowe moze tokens of the matter, thus began his speech.

*The denise of the two olde men Croniel and Franc-Gall, held vpon the waie going towards the Citie of Orbe.*

## CAP. 6.



Stranger my friend, quoth the Archier, thou speakest so obscurelie, and thy talke so entermingled with destomachall sobbes, deepe sighes, and sodaine mutations, with confusion and mingling together of Prophecies, Fates, Oracles, and Miracles, that I cannot well vnderstand the discourse of thy farre and vagrant peregrination searching thy sonne whom thou callest Alectoz, carried away (if it be credible) by the winde: vnlesse thou bring forth the beginning & first causes of this aduventure, when, and in what place, & how thou hast lost thy Sonne, what he is, and what thou art, of what Nation and qualitie; for to my iudgement thou seemest not to bee a man of seruile or base condition, but rather a franke and liberall Gentleman, as full well thou hast given mee to vnderstand at our first meeting: wherefore I beseech thee of curtesie disvaime not to reckon  
vnto

vnco me thy fortune, and thy deere Sonne Alecton, from the beginning to the ende; chievely and patiently without confusion or interruption of cōplaints. That quoth Franc-Gall, can I not well doo my friend Archier; for, as from the aier moued by tempest troublesome winde do blowe, great showers of raine fall, and thunder claps issue; euen so from a tormented heart can nought proceed but sobbes, nought distill but teares, nought descend but weepings and waylings. Whereouer the time letteth me, yea and the desire also which I haue of going to the place whereof the bird sang, will not permit me to do it, vpon whose time neuertheless I knowe not what to coniecture it is so ambiguous, and seemeth so contrarie in it selfe.

And for this cause, quoth the Archier, oughtest thou lesse to defer the narration to me of thy facts, affaires, and aduentures, whereof I hope to giue thee some good counsell and comfort after I shall well vnderstand them. And for that the way to the Sands (whereto thou pretendest to goe) is not so short as peraduenture it seemeth to be, but long enough from hence (as I may tell thee) for vs speciallie who are already olde and heauie by age, or rather destitute of the limetie fire which heretofore hath sustained vs quick and nimble, who now goe grauely and heauely: the length of the time and way will suffice thee to reckon, and me to giue care to thy former fortunes: whereof (as God loue me) I haue dolour and compassion with thee: for being a man I esteeme no humane thing, but that it may touch me. I heartely thanke thee of thine humilitie quoth Franc-Gall, but by how much thy compassion should be consolatorie vnto me, by so much should the commemoration thereof be dolorfull: and therefore it is better for mee with silence to keepe my profound dolour in my transpierced heart, then by uttering my misaduentures to reuue my former griefes. No no, quoth the Archier, thou must not do so, but to the contrarie solate thy beaue heart, by renewing thy griefe to him, who without feeling it will lighten thee

## The first part

the of the one halfe, yea peradventure of the whole. And therefore discharge thy bodie of thy harnesse and mantle, by giuing it to thy page, and thy hart of thy passions by communicating of them to me (being a stranger, yet notwithstanding a man): and so shalt thou do thy selfe pleasure, and accomplish my desire; and thou eke by accompting it, and I by the hearing thereof, shall abridge and shorten the length of our waye, and forget our wearinesse: for as the common prouerbe goeth,

*In trauell, talke without reproach,  
Is better than a tottering coach.*

An old companion quoth Franc-Gal, I feele that already to be true in me which thou hast said: for thy humane speeches do inuite me to ease my heart, in vomiting the remembraunce of my diuers aduentures, as well good as euill, with my present deliberations, & the sweete conceits of my hope to come, which among other things doo promise comfort and counsell of thee. And therefore now will I take as great solace and pleasure to discover to thee my fortunes, as thou hast had curious desire to enquire them of me: hearken therefore as wee goe leasurly, and thou shalt heare meruailes. Begin then peaceably, quoth the Archier, and I will willingly giue attentiu heerde therunto.

Then Franc-Gal put off his purple mantle whose cape was of cloath of golde enriched with a great and celestiaall Saphir, and toke off from his necke his shield carrying vpon Azure a Sonne of golde, & his helmet from his head, whereof onely before he had but lifted by the visor, giuing it all to his page who followed him, being a yong and lustie man called Oplophor. And so remained Franc-Gal, onely in his single coslet, great and straight, his bodie being of a faire and vpright stature, exceeding the common forme of men, and lifting vp a head already halfe balde what with age and bearing of his helmet, his haire white and his beard siluered, long, & wreathed like the streames  
of

of a swift browe, his visage faire, and being open, full of redoubtable serenitie, with a gracious dignitie, admirable to all the beholders, chieflie to the olde Archier, who seeing him openly, esteemed in his heart neuer among mortall men to haue scene a more faire creature; sauing that the serenitie of his face was somewhat troubled with a cloud of inward griefe, pearcing forth grosse teares, which distilled downe his white beard: which thing the Archier apperceiuing, said vnto him after this manner; Noble Lord, for so thy apparaunce doth declare, leaue I beseech thee these lamentations to women and children, and to soft and effeminated men, & reckon constantly to vs thine aduentures: for vnto a man of such a personage, as I see thou art, armour is more seemely than teares. Thou saist truch quoth Franc-Gall, and spakest like a wise man, and of a high affaire: and for that cause will I suppressse my passions, and in proceeding on our way, accompt vnto thee mine actions; and therefore giue eare. That will I do (quoth the olde Archier) sauing (vnder thy correction) I will now and then make some short and interlocutory demands vpon such points, wherein I shall perceiue a more plainer intelligence, to be better than a simple narration. Right willingly, quoth Franc-Gall, for by that meanes I shall haue leasure to breathe in my going and speaking; and our talke shall be more gracious being altered, than continued; and the matter better remembred and vnderstood. And therefore I pray thee feare not so enteriect incidences, and breake my talke, where thou shalt see thy selfe not fully satisfied. And now behold, I begin my historie.

to the first, who gained one, and the second, who gained two, and the third, who gained three. A narration of the ancient Tower of the three fates, of the three Sisters, and of their mother, Lady Andage.

There is in the West a certain long way, narrow, and little frequented, by reason of the sharpe, blinde, and hard keeping thereof: the which way notwithstanding leadeth to the most ancient Temple of the Soueraigne. And by which the renowned King Percefore knew the pectore of the architecture of that percelle Temple, dedicated to soueraigne Jehouah, which he created and edificated in the diabolical forest of Darnant, to chase and extermine the wicked spirits, who at that time kept their habitation in those solitarie forests; and to give aduise to wandering knights, who in those percelle woods were searching strange adventures. At the end of which way, leading towards the foresaid soueraigne Temple, was a most ancient round Tower, builded before the memorie of man: whose foundations were faire deeply hidde, even vnto the bottomlesse pits, and there vnder a most horrible Barathre or prison of accursed and wicked creatures. But the top thereof was so highly elevated, that it seemed to exceed the heauens, and whereunto no earthly eye (were it ever so sharpe) could euer attaine: onely three faire & ample stages might be perceiued, garnished with great and mightie porches, engrauen and figured with infinite images, and shadowed with diuers and sundrie colours, mettalls, and precious stones of exceeding splendour: and for the rest vnpromitted to all people, with open gates & cleere windows. Within these three Stages were dwelling three Fates, Sisters

germaines,

germaines, and daughters to a high, puissant and puissant  
Ladie called Anange, resident (as it is said, and helde for  
certaine) on the highest top of that Tower. And belowe  
her in the first Stage, her worthiest daughter and first sa-  
tall Sister called Cloronome, was resident. In the second  
Stage another satall Sister called Zodore, was dwelling;  
and in the last and lowest Stage the third satall Sister,  
who had to her proper name Termame inhabited. Thus  
were these three satall Sisters germanes and termesly,  
resident with their traine in the three partes of the said  
ancient Tower, so well contrived and nere together, that  
they might enter the one into the other: but abate  
all ruled their ancient mother Anange.

Upon this point, the olde Archier began to speake in  
this sort: It is a common prouerbe (quoth he) that a good  
lier must haue a good memorie, lest by forgetting his selfe  
he contrarie himselfe in his last. Wherefore I praye  
take heede that in the beginning of thy processe, thou be  
not found by thy forgetfulnesse a liar, which willingly I  
can hardly beare withall. Remember therefore that  
thou toldest me that the foundations of the Tower where  
of thou speakest, are so lowe as the obscure depths, where  
the eye of mortall man neuer penetrateth, and that the top  
thereof by his immensall height, doth exceede the viewe of  
our humane sight: how then cometh it to passe, that the  
depth of this Tower and the things there vnder are knowne  
amongst men? and how is it evident that on the top  
thereof the ancient Lady whom thou callest Anange, mo-  
ther to the three sisters inhabiting in the foresaid three pa-  
rades is there resident, seeing thou hast said the excellencie  
of the Tower is not to be comprehended with the scope of  
man wherby it seemeth, that either thou dost gesse ther-  
of by imagination; or els that thou knowest it by reueala-  
tion.

Wherein thou failest not (quoth Franc-Gall) for parte-  
ly I haue knowen it by cleare and true reuealation by a

Calodaimon verie familiar with me, who assisteth me in all things, and oftentimes raviseth my spirit out of my bodie, carrying it into farre and strange places, and showing me merueilous things, which no man can tel vnles he had been there present: whereof (being returned againe to my selfe) I haue good remembrance, and I haue reported that which afterwards hath been found veritable. And thereby it happened, that one day being at the fote of this Tower, contemplating the meruailous workmanship thereof, and reasoning with my selfe that according to the exceeding height of it, belonged necessarily a foundation of terrible depth: whiles I was overcome with this consideration, beholde from a part of Heauen came flying towards me a white feathered Bird, with her beake & legs so red as faire corall, her eyes of the colour of fire, flaming in shew like two precious carbuncles: who in kissing wise came and put her beake into my mouth, wherewith by an occult vertue she drew my spirite vnto her, leauing my bodie in the mean time gasping and panting much like to one in a trance. And so hauing eleuated my spirite vnto the lower Region of the aier, not by flight upwards, but as it were turning & going round about all the climates of the world (like those who by often winding clime the rude and high mountaines) vntill it was eleuate right towards the North ouer an Island called *Ireland*, where sodainly this Bird left mee, and let mee fall shooting like a tempest into this Isle, in a great hole or well right drepe: where in the midst of the darknesse, by a little glittering of a sulphurian light, I perceiued the depth of this round Tower, abased euen from the superficialitie of the earth vnto the point centrique or centre of the same: and below a Barathre or eternall prison, where by the infernall obscuritie I could see nothing but darknesse dispersed vpon the face of the depths: but well might I heare horrible cries, & fearefull hurlings mingled with plaints & groanes like to men tormented, and furious enraged beasts fighting amongst them.

themselves, chrowing and biting one another in extreame  
 rage. Whereupon through great feare I leaped out a-  
 fright so rudely, that I mounted out into the cleare light:  
 where the sozenamed white bird (which in truth was my  
 Calodaimon) came and toke me, demaunding me saying;  
 Franc-Gal hast thou seene that which thou desirest? Yea,  
 yea, quoth I, and heard fearfull cries which caused me to  
 retire: but I knewe not what it should be, vnlesse it be the  
 eternal prison of the wicked Giants Triphon and Briaro,  
 with their complices and followers, who were not afraide  
 to set themselves against the Soueraigne: vpon whome  
 (being cast downe and desolated) the mountaines & great  
 rockes, which are the foundations of the auncient Tower  
 which thou didst behold, haue been chrowen: the which of-  
 tentimes they shake & cause to tremble by the impatience  
 of intollerable paines, in shaking sometimes the foundati-  
 ons by the aboundaunce of water cast and chrowen out by  
 their conduct, and other whiles by the impetuositie of the  
 windes comming from their despitfull sighings: & some-  
 time by the violence of the fire coming out of thei throats,  
 and by the inflamed vapoꝝ of forceable ire and outrageous  
 wrath. Neuerthelesse for all their forces they shall neuer  
 bring it to ruine, nor cast it downe, neither shall they be dis-  
 charged or come out of this tenebrous prison, vnlesse the  
 infinite bountie of the vanquisher surmount the obstinate  
 mallice of the vanquished, who neither hope nor desire it,  
 but obstinately please themselves with their paines, as the  
 cursed serpents feede themselves with their owne venime:  
 and therefore let vs leaue them in their eternall miseries.  
 In saying thus, he carried me vp so high, that hauing the  
 elements and planets vnder my feete, I found my selfe a-  
 boue the Towre, wherein I beheld in great sublimitie vp-  
 on the pomell of the top thereof this olde Ladie, which my  
 Calodaimon tolde mee was Arange mother of the three  
 Sisters: and hauing intently considered her estate and  
 puissance, in a moment I descended into my bodie, & bee-  
 ing

being come to my selfe, I remembred well the meruailous things that I had seene, and such as I haue accompted to thee in truth.

That which thou hast accompted quoth the Archier, is wonderfull, yet neuerthelesse seeming true and credible in mine opinion: for the verie same or the like not long since hath been heard of in this Region, by a meruailous and supernaturall aduenture.

What is that I pray thee, quoth Franc-Gall? that I passe no further in my narration, before I haue understood of thee the example serving for the confirmation of my speech; which will cause thee more easilie to giue credit to the rest. Therefore I beseech thee to tell it me, and I will giue thee good audience.

I am right well content, quoth the Archier, so that the whiles thou remember the point where thou leapest, of the olde Ladie Anange sitting vpon the ponnell of the Tower: and therefore now take thy rest awhile, and I by manner of interlocutorie respiration will reckon to thee a thing conuenient to the narration of thy ecstasieall vision and rauishment of thy spirit to the depth and top of the Tower.

*Of the loue of Mammon towards the faire Ladie Thanaïs,  
of her enforcement, poysoning, and death.*

## CAP. 8.



In the prime of my youth, (about 470. yeres passed) I bring of the age of knowledge, as it were 49. yeres; there came into these partes an vnknown man, ill shapen and blacke like to an Ethiopian, neuerthelesse verie rich in siluer, golde, precious stones, and other mettalls, & for the rest, of a great  
and

and subtil spirit, and exceeding well learned in euerie science farre aboue all other that he met. This man hauing taken his dwelling in the Citie of *Orbe*, (whereto we are now going) and there (by reason of the store of money that he possessed, and for that the Towne (by meanes of the Sea nere adiacent, and of the riuers, ports and passages thereto adioyning) is very commodious for a place of merchandize) he helde and boze the state of a merchant & Banquer. Of what merchandize quoth *Franc-Gall*, made he his traffique: He was said the *Archier*, a temporall merchant: for he sold for time by compt and measure. So this temporall Merchant called *Mammon*, holding a famous Banque in *Orbe*, became amorous of a right faire and most renowned Maiden, of one of the richest and noblest houses in the Citie, which Maiden was called *Thanais*. This faire *Mammon* beeing thus taken with the loue of *Thanais*, began to court her euill fauoured lie enough, and more imperiously than graciouslie, by banting of himselfe, ostentation of his great riches and cunning, and with displaying and blaming of all others, chiefly of the vertuous: besides that, he sought to allure her by rich gifts & presents, of golde, of gemmes, rings and iewels, (although by nature he was verie couetous) but aboue all with most faire and ample promises. But the Maiden, to whome these proud brauados were intollerable, and who had perhaps lodged her heart in some higher place, reiected all his presents, refused his offers, shunned his encountrie, & would giue no eare to his proud words; as one whom she hated as much as he desired her, both for his improbous and ungracious behauiour, & for his displeasing gesture. Whereupon, beeing aduertised by one of her *Horian* slaues, that she was accustomed euerie morning so soone as she rose, to goe halfe vncloathed with her haire hanging down, to take the aire in the garden, to refresh and wash her selfe and visage, in the *Mured* *Streames* of the fountaine, which ranne through the same: he (for a certaine pte of money, & promise

mise of redemption out of bondage, and setting at libertie  
 of this her *Egyptian* slave) was by her let in to the garden;  
 where he hid himselfe in a thicke Arbour till the morning,  
 that his desired *Thanaïs* should come: who according to  
 her accustomed manner failed not. Then he from his em-  
 bushment seeing this faire yong creature comming, coue-  
 red with a single peticote of light sattin, and abating the  
 deaw with her bare fete whiter than *Alabaster*, her fayre  
 armes (naked and beautified with liuely whitenes) being  
 discovered: her breasts (borne out with two apples of yuo-  
 ric, or pappes of the same coulour) lying open; her head  
 lightly trussed vp with a faire & white kerchiefe of fine l<sup>n</sup>  
 nen, behind the which one might behold her golden haire,  
 whereof one part vntressed hong downe ouer her necke &  
 shoulders, and another part frizzled and curled descended  
 wauiug ouer her cleare eyes, like two peeces of siluer new-  
 lie forged, which being somewhat aggrauated with ouer-  
 much sleepe, and seeming as yet neuer stroken with loue,  
 made them haue the greater grace. *Mammon* out of his  
 embushment perceiuing such diuine humanitie, with paine  
 could he desist or defer his iopes from running to embrace  
 her: notwithstanding loue which in his first mouements is  
 neuer without feare, defended him, and withheld him, till  
 such time as *Thanaïs* without espying him was arrived at  
 the fountaine: where (as shee was beholding in the reuer-  
 berant clearenesse of the *Water*, the flower of her fayre  
 youth, making her selfe readie to wash her eyes, hands, and  
 vermilion lips) sodainly behold *Mammon* (comming out  
 of his den) threwe himselfe vnawares vpon her with ope-  
 ned armes, speaking to her as amozously as he could, and  
 presented vnto her with humble suites, and affectuous re-  
 quests, both his goods and person; adioyning to his pray-  
 ers, threatinings and outrages: in such sort that seeing her  
 obstinate refusall, her turning away of her visage, and her  
 repulling of him away with her armes, with a furious  
 heate which inflamed him, he assaied to force her, and to ra-  
 with

with her of that by violence, which otherwise he could not obtaine by loue, hope of promises, nor feare of threathings. The silly Maiden trembling with feare, seeing her bodie and honour in danger by the assault of this furious man, cast forth a loud crie, calling to her aide two brothers which she had, yong and braue men, inhabiting next to the garden: who vnderstanding the fearful voyce of their well-beloued Sister, sodainly went forth in armes, with a companie of seruants well provided. Whom Mammon seeing comming towards him with terrible furie, knew right well, that it was not verie sure for him to remaine there. Whereuppon moe all feare so adioyned winges to his light heeles, that by a liuely course he leaped ouer the wal, and saued himselfe by swiftnesse, and escaped the hands of her brethren seekers of reuenge: who hauing lost the rauisher, toke their wofull Sister, and consolating her with assurance, led her into the chamber, to reuiue her affrighted spirites.

Mammon thus escaped from their hands, found himselfe merueilously confounded and troubled with the obstinate refusall and proud disdain (as he thought) of his well-beloued Thanaïs: whereby notwithstanding his ardent loue was nothing at all cooled or diminished, but contrariwise, more enflamed and augmented. For euen as a Cannon shot striking against a rocke or hard wall, by reason of so sharpe encounterie, receiueth newe strength of impetuous retie: euen so the furious courage of Mammon hauing encountered so sharpe refusall of faire Thanaïs, & so soze a chase of her brothers, chafed himselfe more aboundantlie with despitteful anger, and the furie of his loue or rather of rage, receiued more vehement force, by the offence of so rude a repulse. Whereupon there remaining no more mean or hope of obtaining his desire; he toke him to his wicked artes whereof he was a souereigne Master, and purposed to make her loue him by force and against nature, by the vertue of a Philtre or louing popson, which he composed

## The first part

in an apple of Venus, commonly called a loue apple, by an apple of follie, made with the bloud of a wagtaile, and other drugs fit for that purpose, odorated with manie hote spices, sweetened in sugar three times baked, and enchanted with three wordes which he knewe to be proper to the making of the same: in such sort, that he made an apple of confiture, right swete to the smell, and right good to the taste, but most dangerous to the bodie and heart, as the issue shewed. This being done, he practised with the Eozian slave for money, promising her affranchment and deliuerance out of bondage, if she would and could finde the meanes to make her Ladie Thanais in some collation to eate this apple, hauing such vertue, that whosoener presented it, should be in fauor and grace of the receiuer thereof, and yeld to the giuer great aduantage. The Eozian slave being couetous, and giuing ouer much beliefe to his faire wordes and flattering promises, and presuming alreadie of her libertie & franchise, which aboue all other things she most esteemed and desired, withall, of the good will of her mistresse; right willingly took both the money, and the apple, which was put in a vessell of Christall, promising him that she would minister it to her Mistresse, with the first opportunitie; which thing she delayed not to bring to passe. For the selfe same day that Thanais was so ouertaken, and put to such distresse by Mammon (as it hath bin said) she remained so moued and altered, that in the Evening at her going to bed, her heart began to faile her: for the aide whereof, her Slave presented her with this confected apple, which she found verie delicious to the taste, insomuch that her spirites reuiued againe: and after shee had dronke a little wine, sodainly shee fell into a profound sleepe, yet neuerthelesse being troubled with dreames and terrible fantasies, which she witnessed by the turnings of her face, disorderly mouing of hir limmes, and profound sighes intermingled from time to time with cries, in such sort, that when she awaked, she was found to haue lost her senses,

senses, transported of her spirites, and become altogether foolish. Finally, after long torment of bodie and mind, by reason of the inflammation of that villanous apple, the poore and miserable Thanaïs died, her bodie remaining after her death so horrible and hideous to behold, that they made no greater hast than to goe burie her, and to carrie her to a sepulcher in the ende of a field, appertaining to their fathers house, adioyning to the high way where we now are, and verie neare to this place, soz as I thinke, behold the sepulcher which alreadie beginneth to appeare vnto vs, wherein Thanaïs with her Moorian slaue were buried. Who in remorse of conscience of this her wicked ministerie, went and hanged her selfe, hauing beheld the heauie aduenture of her traiterous seruice, and well knowing she could not escape the handes of the two brethren, who would reuenge the death of their sister vpon her. Behold what she got by the promise of Mammon, shewing in effect that the reward of sinne is death. Thus were these two bodie buried in this sepulcher which thou seest befoze vs, which we may goe to see, and there repose our selues a while and take breath. In saying whereof, these two olde men approached to a sepulcher of Parble, which was at the ende of a field on the left hand of the high way. For the custome at that time was to build their sepulchers euerie man in his proper ground, along by the high way side, to the end that traouellers in resting and reposing themselves vpon the stone, might bee occupied in reading their Epitaphs: which these two olde men did, turning towards the Combe. And the good Archier laid downe his bowe and quier vpon the stone with a bottle full of wine, whereof he dranke first out of a silver goblet which hee had about him, and after presented it to Franc-Gal, who receiued it with a good will, and drank to him againe. These two olde men being thus reposed vpon the lower steps of the sepulcher, made their collation with a morsell of white bread, and the wing of a roasted and spiced Pheasant, which the Archier had slaine the day be-

foze, and brought with him in a faire napkin for his refecti-  
 tion in the fields, as ordinarily he was accustomed to do in  
 going to the chafe: and so they drank either of them once.  
 And afterwards whiles the Squire made an ende of emp-  
 tying the bottle, they mounted the steps of the sepulcher  
 to see if they could behold some Epitaph, where they found  
 in a stone of flourishing Porphyre variable of colours and  
 waued like the streames of a swift River, which was vpon  
 the Tombe, a blacke knight of brown Marble engrauen,  
 bearing a guilded shield, holding by the mane a fair white  
 mare of snowie Alabaster, inforcing himselfe to mount vpon  
 her; but the mare by her figure shewed her selfe so rebel-  
 lious in flinging that he could not, wherefoze through an-  
 ger he thrust her through the body with his flaming sword,  
 out of which wound in stead of bowells issued a Serpent,  
 and at the fecte thereof was set a Howle engrauen in  
 Iteate.

Franc-Gal was much abashed at this figure, and said  
 that it was notably made according to the historie before  
 mentioned: for the stone of greene and waued Porphyrie  
 represented the garden and fountaine: the blacke Knight  
 with the guilded shield signified the soule and rich Mam-  
 mon: the white Mare figured the faire Thanais: the  
 Howle was a token of the Moian slaue: the holding of  
 of the Mare by the mayne, and assaying to mount vpon  
 her, signified the forcement which Mammon would haue  
 done in the garden: the kicking of the white Mare repre-  
 sented the refusall of Thanais: the stroake of the burning  
 sword, was the popsoning apple, and the wound her death;  
 but of the Serpent which issued therout, he could not con-  
 iecture what it betokened, vntill the Archier enterpreted  
 the same afterwards, as you shall heare.

Having thus contemplated the figures vpon the sepul-  
 cher, they might perceiue belowe vpon the stone of Por-  
 phirie foure verses engrauen: whereof the first two were  
 witten in ancient letters of black colour, and the two last  
 in

in red letters of a sanguine colour, which seemed to them later & fresher written than the first, as in truth they were according to the adventure which followed, & the four verses of the Epitaph were these.

*Here lyeth Thanais who late hath slaine  
Loue, death, and eake the Negro vaine.*

*Mammon who causde her death by force,  
Shall gender life in her dead corse.*

At these two last verses Franc-Gal was much abashed, and demaunded of the Archier, if he knewe their signification: Wea (quoth he) and I wil tell it thee presently. Sit downe if it please thee, and at thine ease giue eare to the residue of my Historie.

*Of the generation and birth of the fatall Infant of lea-  
sing.*

C A P. 9.



These two olde men being reposed on the bankes of the sepulcher, the old Archier began the continuance of his tale in this wise. After that the two bodies of Thanais & her Moorish slave, were entombed, and the ceremonies, according to the custome of the Countrey, in dolefull manner accomplished, each one retired to rest. Onely Mammon remained in a terrible vnquietnesse, not finding rest either of soule or bodie: for the furies of remorse, repentance, disdaine, wrath, wayling, despite, impossible desire,

fire, and rage of unbridled loue, shooke continuallie before  
 the eyes of his fantastickall vnderstanding, their burning &  
 bloudie torches : in such sort, that his vehement passions  
 would neither suffer him to sleepe or rest, especially the  
 loue of the deceased Thanais, which by so much more was  
 enflamed in him, as the hope of euer obtaining his desire  
 was furthest from him. So as when he would settle him-  
 selfe to sleepe, the figure of Thanais seemed to present it  
 selfe before him in such beautie and grace as hee had scene  
 her in the garden. And as louers forge dreames according  
 to their sensuall appetites, and disordinate desires, he sud-  
 deinly imagined, and fully perswaded with himselfe, that  
 Thanais was not dead, but by force of the Philtre, onely  
 falne into a Lethargie and swowne : and that by going to  
 the place where she lay entombed, he might yet enjoy that  
 without let or hindrance, which he so long had desired.  
 Upon this, sleepe ouercame him, and a Phantasme in the  
 the likenes of Thanais disformed, pale, and deadly, seemed  
 to appeare vnto him, saying; Mammon thou sleepest, and  
 I suffer in attending thee: why comst thou not to the place  
 wher I am, to take without danger, that which once thou  
 wouldest with so great perill rauish from me. Upon this  
 his dogge barked and Calyph his Page fearefully began  
 to crie: and he himselfe wakening, demanded what he ap-  
 pled: For that (quoth the page) I haue scene a flying ser-  
 pent issue from behind the curtaine of your bed, and depar-  
 ting hereout by the lower hole of the chimney. Mammon  
 hearing this talke, and conferring this vision with his  
 dreame, found himselfe so disturbed, that through the im-  
 patience of loue he arose, & taking with him for sole com-  
 panion his onely page as yet verie fearfull, in the begin-  
 ning of the night, came to the place where wee now are,  
 mounted vp to the sepulcher, and (with his helpe) remov-  
 ued the stone from the monument (for at that time these fi-  
 gures were yet vnplaced) and causing his page to keep the  
 watch, least anie one should come and descrie them, he en-  
 tred

tred into the sepulcher, where (in the performing of his  
 detestable assignment) he employed a great part of the si-  
 lent night, whose obscuritie and darknesse seemed to him  
 sufficient to couer and cloake his villanie. Which being  
 done, he might heare the voyce of some wicked spirit spea-  
 king through the carrion carcasle of the Moorian slaue, ut-  
 tering these speeches following; Mammou thou hast be-  
 gotten a childe. Returne therefore to this place, and at this  
 instant hower, within two and twentieth dayes to receiue the  
 fruite of thy seede, whereof faile not: for if thou do, our  
 Prince shall not faile to fetch thee by his Legionaries to  
 thy great euil and torment. How can this be (quoth Mam-  
 mou) that within three weekes the childe should be grow-  
 en to perfect birth, whereto nine moneths are requisite or  
 at least seauen? An euill weede (quoth the spirit) commeth  
 forth sooner than a good hearbe, besides that thou must vn-  
 derstand, that when nature faileth her selfe to faile & rende  
 to corruption, then she forceth her selfe the more, and ad-  
 uanceth more faster to generation. And for that the Ma-  
 trice of this dead bodie must die shortly, it hasteneth it self  
 to bring forth the fruite of thy seede before the due time,  
 which thou must come to receiue within three times seauen  
 dayes, at the hower appointed: wherefore faile not; & now  
 get thee hence, for thou hast no more to do here. This said,  
 the voyce ceased, and Mammou soe afraid issued out of  
 the sepulcher, whereupon with the aide of his Page Ca-  
 lyph he laid the stone, & returned to his lodging, accom-  
 panying these things to his man, who was priue to all his  
 dealings, especially of this his loue toward the deceased  
 Thanais, and with him consulted whether he shuld obey  
 the Moorsquine spirit, and returne againe thereto within  
 three weekes, or no: which thing after some deliberation  
 taken, was concluded. And the two. and twentieth daye  
 after, at the same nightly houre, they came to the place and  
 remoued the stone from the monument; whereinto Mam-  
 mou entred, and by the variable shining of a blew sulphu-

rian fire, which sparkled betwene the heads of the dead bodies. he might perceiue an Infant newly borne, laid at the feet of Thanais, vppon the ende of the winding sheete, betwene two women of terrible aspect, & of diuers formes; for the one had a visage pleasant and laughing, but blistered with diuers colours like the worke of a rich iewell enamelled, and yet neuerthelesse delectable to behold: and she like a Fatallesse (as she was) predestinated the childe in this sort; Thou childe Desalethes, (for so thou shalt be named, in being borne without terme, & nourished without milke) I forgett thee, that thou shalt be the greatest liar of this world, a simuler and dissembler in words and deedes, in all false workes and speeches vnder appaunce and colour of amiable veritie, and cleane contrarie in couert thought to that which thou shalt speake in open words; euen as thy externall members are faire, and thy internall soule and filthie. (As in truth this childe named Desalethes was, his face, neck, hands, and all that outwardly appeared, being verie white, faire, gracions to the eye, pleasant, and alluring, holding the forme and beautie of the mother; but the rest of his bodie and members which were hidde, were foule and filthy, according to the deformitie and obscuritie of his father.) After that this first Fatallesse had thus sinisterly presaged vppon this bysormed Bnat, the second Fatallesse who was of visage more sad, seuerer, and of colour pale, (but white and cleanly) thus propounded his destiny; Like as you (my sister Calendre) haue cast your sort vpon this childe, that he shall liue so long as hee continueth in his lying; euen so I doe destine him, that he shall die for telling the truth, and that so soone as hee shall haue spoken it. So be it Sister Clarence (quoth Calendre) in giuing their hands right and left the one to the other, and so conioyned they laid them vppon the head of the childe, who at that instant arose, as it were of the age of fourteen yeares, furiously crying; Mammon, thou honest man, thou shalt leaue me here rather buried than borne. No, no, my deare

deare sonne (quoth Mammon) that will I not truly: and therewith embraced him; and the two fairestes sodainely vanished away, with the sulphurian fire, which turned to a most stinking smoke: and at that verie instant issued out of the bodie of the Dove, the horrible voyce of a wicked spirit, thundring out these words.

*That which is thine take thou away,  
And in this place no longer stay.*

At this commandement, Mammon remembering wel what he had heard and understood of the Destinies of his Sonne Desalethes, take him by the hand, and went out of the Monument together, whereon by the help of Calyph they laid the stone againe. Which was no sooner laid, but a thunder clap and lightning fell from Heauen vpon the plate of Porphirie, with the statues of blacke Marble, of Alabaster, and Iteate, in figure of a blacke Knight, a yong Mare, and of a Howle, even as we haue now seene them. And forthwith were found engrauen these two last verses in bloudie letters, beneath the verses which the two Brothers of Thanaïs had first set vp, written simply in olde blacke letters: which two verses last engraued, (as it is thought with the diuels clawe) as also the statues fallen out of the aier, are without either plaister or souldring so firmly affixed to the Porphirie, that it is impossible to remove them. All those who afterwards saw and read them haue remained meruailously astonished, and could not conjecture nor vnderstand what they should signifie, vntil such time as the whole matter was discovered by Calyph the Page of Mammon, and that by this aduenture.

*Of the first institution of Desalethes vnder Doctour  
Pseudomanthanon, of the artes which he insigne  
him, and how his disciple profited: what paiement  
he gaue his Master, and in what manner he pra-  
ctised his science.*

## CAP. IO.



Ammon and his sonne Desalethes being come out of the sepulcher, the father covered the naked childe with his cloake, & so toke their way homeward with Calph who followed them giuing eare to their talke: amongst the which Mammou by the way asked his sonne Desalethes if hee had sene the two fatal sisters Calandre and Clarence and vnderstood their presages vpon him? Desalethes verie simple answered no. But alreadie hee lied according to his naturall proprietie: for he both saw the two Sisters, and vnderstood their talke yea better than Mammou, as one that was betweene them. The father hearing his young sonne answere so simply, with a white visage, faire, sweete, and amiable, and esteeming that he said truth (which was nothing lesse) reckoned to him the presages that he should not die, but for telling the truth, whose contrarie is lying: and therefore for the conseruation of his durable life (like a most wicked man as hee was) hee exhorted him to let all faith and truth aside; and to settle himselfe continually to speake and practise lyings, fraudes and disloyal infidelities: whereto the simple babe answered, hee knewe not how to lie, neither could he do it. But therein he lied so egregiously and filchily, that the aire therewith was infected, as if it had been with the breath of a Basilisque: for he could  
no

no more lie, than the Basilisque kill, the Wolfe deuoure, the water drowne, and the fire burne, whose primitive beginnings were for that intent. In such sort, that when he spake most simply, he then most of all lied. Yet his father being deceived in his false & dissembling simplicitie, beleued him, and being come to his lodging, incontinent, he apparelled him in braue and sumptuous aray (which he could doe verie well, being one of the richest in the Citie of Orbe) and decked him in cloathes of golde, silver, and and like of all kind of colours (except white and red) but specially of changeable colours, and of all severall sorts of silkes, mettalls, and cloathes of tissue, embroyerie and others, and of all the diuers cuts and variable fashions, which could newly be found throughout al the Nations of the world.

Desalethes thus apparelled with such rich and braue habites, and for euerie day a new change, which couered his blacke laydnesse, and set out the faire and white parts of his visage, necke, breast and hands, hee seemed so faire a childe, so pleasant and gracious to all, that euerie one toke of him great pleasure. Wherefore his father Mammion seeing him so desirabile, loued him greatly, and fearing the sort which hee had vnderstood, (which was to dye for saying the truth) and beleueing (that which in lying he had told him) that he knew not how to lie: gaue him in charge to be taught to a right excellent Master, who of that Art made profession, not publiqueslie, but priuely, and secretly; neither read he but by night. This good Doctor was called Pseudomanthanon, most skilfull in the Artes of his profession, which were Magicke, Caballicke, Chalmud, hypocrisie, brotherie, idolatrie, iudiciall Astrologie, Sophistrie, Poetrie, Alchymie, Emperie, Medicastrie, legerdemaine, subtiltie, pillerie, banquerie, vsurie, interesterie, change, barterie, beggerie, falsifying of weights & measures, forgerie, hap-lourderie, reuerie, and carrionly gimbrie, popsoning, cousning, dicing, brawling, mocke-

rie, bawderie, bitcherie, flatterie, policie, blabberie, menterie, diuillishnesse and dammerie; with such other sciences and practises colouring & destroying veritie. Of all which, this cunning Doctor Pseudomanthanon was soueraigne Lord, and a nightly ensigner: from whose schoule (as the souldiers issued out of the belly of the Troyan horse) infinite numbers of cunning men chiefly of the Greekes, as Lucian, Homere, and as it were all the Poets; except Lucan, Lucret, Columel, Caton, Theognis, Phocylides, Arat, and some others, who were banished. From thence are likewise sprong the pleasant volumes of Lancelot of the Lake, of Tristram, Perseforest, Amadis of Gaule, Palmerin, and such like: but chiefly from thence is proceeded the first coppie of the Alcoran in the Arabian language, afterwards translated into Latine. To this right cunning Doctor, was this fine disciple Desalethes deliuered to bee taught all these good artes of fallitie and menterie; who in verie little time so studied, and in so shorte time aduanced himselfe in the science and practise of these artes of lying, that he passed and surmounted his Master: and deceiued him often times in his otone deceit; specially in the payment for his teaching: for hauing agreed with him on this condition, that he shuld pay him one talent valued at 500. crownes, in the reward of his teaching, in the first cause that by menterie or finenesse he shuld win in turning right with sleight: the accord being written and signed, it fortuned that Pseudomanthanon seeing his scholler Desalethes to haue well profited in his artes, demaunded of him his promised salarie: but Desalethes denied it him, telling him flatly, that he ought him nothing. Whereupon Pseudomanthanon called him before a Iudge where he appeared. And the Master after he had made his demaund, and shewen the accord of the bargaine, thus propounded his reason cutting on both sides in this wise; O foole, and euill aduised Scholler, doost thou not knowe, that necessarily thou shalt be condemned to pay me, whether thou winnest  
this

this matter, or no. For if thou win it, it cannot be but by fine policie, & wresting the law, whereby thou must needs pay me according to our accord and writing, which is such that at the first cause by thee craftely gotten, thou shouldest pay me a talent: but to the contrarie, if thou dost lose, thou shalt be condemned to pay me by execution of the Judges sentence; and so canst thou not escape to pay me. To this, the well learned scholler by a crooked pearcing, and contrarie reason, answered in this forme; O good Master, and subtile Doctor, saving thine honour: thou takest not this argument by the right end: but contrariwise as it seemeth to me, I ought necessarily to be absolved of thy demand, whether I win this matter or lose it. For if I win it, I shall be quit by the absolute sentence of the Judge: and if that I lose it, I ought to paye thee nothing, according to the accord set down in thy writing: where it is agreed, that I should not pay thee untill the first matter that I should get by fine deceipt: wherefore not winning this first, if I bee condemn'd, the condition of the bargaine being not come, the bargaine is nothing, & I shall owe thee nought. And thus (O absurd Master) I cannot faile to escape thy pursue.

The Judge hearing such alterations by contraries and indissoluable *Antistrophes*, and not knowing what iudgment to giue, sent them both for an hundred yeares and one. before Rhadamant the infernall Judge, the whole Bench crying after them in execration of their knauerie, this sentence afterwards most renowned: Of an euill Crowe a naughtie egge, of an euill Master a worse Disciple. Behold how Desalethes began to practise the Science which he had learned vnder his good tutor Pseudo-marithanon, and (which is worse) vsing it in all waies he could, entermedling in great affaires with manie people, but specially with the wicked, forsaken, incurious, careless, euill aduised, youthfull and dishonest persons, with light belouers, and strangers of farre Countreies, and with

with the dead (who can neither bite nor reprehend); such were his people for whom he stretched his netts, counter-setting the deuout hypocrite, iudging another hardly, and impudently iustifying himselfe, neuer swearing but when he had a gainfull occasion to periuire, wherewithall easily he made an ende of pleading and biding the Gule. Likewise in buying without payment, selling for readie money and nothing deliuering, receiuing without acquittance, borrowing without rending, retaining the imposts, or (if force constrained him) rending them diminished, hauing great waight and long measure to buy, but small and short to make sale by, forging wills, and seruing for all and by all as witnesses and pawnes: a singular workman to semble and dissemble, to counterfeit all letters and signets, to rase cleanly and subscribe properly, to blanch parchment, & to renue an antique seale, to make a newe obligation with notarie and witnesses already deceased, of an olde & prescript instrument: neuer handling butter without greasie hands, taking weightie golde and good money, and rendering it light, rebased and feeble, or els false, clipped, chiseled and changed money for it: mingling diuers accounts together, and hauing manie papers of vnrasonable reason: opening all letters which came to his hands, to see if anie thing were in them that could hurt or doo him good, & sealing them againe with the like signet, (after the manner of Alexander the false diuine) or holding & cancelling them if it were expedient: spreading bytes abroad of an vncertaine authour, sowing darnell and wicked suspicion amongst friends by secret detraction, and false reports: but aboue all things a seller of Thurim smoakes. For the residue, the best childe in the world, a pleasant liar, a gracious flatterer, an assured boaster, well languaged, well spoken, and a most curteous Curtizan, and for that cause welcome to all companie: bringing his deceitfull words and deedes so finely about like a Mercuriall Vliesses that it was alwaies to his profite and vantage, and without leauing

uinganie thing wherein he might be discovered or ouerta-  
 ken in. Having that an ancient man called Cron, who al-  
 waies inuisibly folowed him pace by pace, and obserued al  
 his deedes & sayings, after he had long time endured them,  
 he finally discovered and stirred against him innumerable  
 people whom he had all deceiued and defrauded one by a-  
 nother. These by conference had together knew and disco-  
 uered the hidden lies, falsenesse, and wickednesse, whereby  
 they had been by him abused, deceiued and defrauded: some  
 accused him, and others brought witnes against him with  
 the aide of olde Cron, who reuealed the greatest part of his  
 most secrete, hidden, and shamefull villanies, which he least  
 hoped should ever haue come to light. Whereof being ac-  
 caint and conuincd (albeit no torture nor torments could  
 make him confesse or acknowledge it) he was notwithstanding  
 declared a publique enemy, and condemned to loose  
 his head, and that all his goods should be confiscate to the  
 Prince of Orbe. His Master Pseudomanchanon feeling the  
 winde thereof, sodainly vanished, & gained with his heeles,  
 taking his flight from thence, and hiding himselfe in diuers  
 secrete places, whereas yet hee maketh profession of his  
 clandestinall lectures. As for his father Mammon he was  
 banished and sent backe into Turquy, and passing through  
 Italy and Venice, and remaining there a while, left be-  
 hind him some of his seed, whereof afterwards sprong up  
 manie children of his generation, as Vliespiegle the in-  
 uenter of subtilties, the gentle knight Imbault of Solier,  
 and such like exquisite workmen. After that the capitall  
 sentence was pronounced vpon Desalethes he was deliue-  
 red into the hands of the executioner, who led him to the  
 place of Justice, showing by the way so small repentance  
 of his wickednes, that he said with loud voyce, he had not  
 merited a common death, but rather a publique entertain-  
 ment of him and his in the pallaice of the Citie, and a sta-  
 tue of gold vpon a Marble pillar in the common place, for  
 his great vertues and good deedes: doubting not but that

after his death they would deifie him, and put him in the catalogue of worthy and heropall men, in the heauen of Mercurie, with the Duke Vlysses and Autolie, and that there should bee composed a new Odysee of his high and worthy praises. But on the contrarie, all the world, yea those of his owne faction reclaymed against him in execration, crying with a loud voyce, Take him away, take him away, kill, kill the wicked man. Nevertheless he marched brauelie to *Must-dy*, (for so was the scarfoll of red & blacke Marble in the market place called, where the offenders doe play their last prize) walking with a loftie gate, & a visage so constant and ioyfull, as though one had led him to a wedding, or some ioyfull feast, and that because hee helde himselfe certaine of his sort and destinie, and that hee had as yet neuer failed to lye; whereby he assured himselfe not to die, and therefore the feare of death made him neither tremble, nor looke pale. With this assurance he marched and mounted vp into the place of punishment, and when he was vpon the scarfoll *Must-dy*, the executioner would haue bound and blinded him: No, no (quoth hee in lying according to his naturall disposition) I will neuer runne away, haue thou no feare, for I haue enough for vs both. In saying thus, he kneeled downe before the Marble stone, and whiles the Executioner prepared his sharpe cutting sword, he turned his view openlie to all the people: to whom (that hee might make his last lye) hee sayd with a lowd voyce, Farewell yee people of Orbe, I goe now to die. This sayd, hee enclined his bodie, and the hangman who had alreadie prepared his sword, in snatching it, with a rude stroke cut off his head.

*Of the flying head, and abymed bodie, with their re-  
turne, and revelations of the things by them scene,  
of their death and buriall, and of the reclosed depth.*

C A P. II.



**H**Is soye then deceiued him (quoth  
Franc-Gall) when his head was  
stroke of, soe thereby failerly all  
miracles. No, no (quoth the Ar-  
chier) but contrariwise thereby  
came great wonders: soe after  
the stroke giuen, no bloud issued  
either out of bodie or head: but  
presently no sooner thā the sword  
was withdrawen, the bodie without head rose vppon his  
feete, and leaped downe on the ground amongst all the as-  
sistants and beholders, soe abashed to see a headlesse body  
to runne: the which impetuously passing through the  
pycasse (who gaue way & retrayed themselves at the strange  
spectacle of so monstrous a hideur) vntill it came to an ob-  
scure dungeon and profound goulph, which a little before  
happened by reason of a terrible earthquake, and had swal-  
lowed by the great tower of the clock and watch of the ci-  
tie into such a profound depth, that no cord with the sound  
of a plummet could finde the bottome thereof; whereinto  
this headlesse bodie cast it selfe. And at the same instaunt,  
the head (stricken off aboue the necke) sprong vp from the  
scarfold thre or foure times, alwaies mounting higher &  
higher: and in this order mounting, the cartilages and  
gristles of the eares sprong out with sharpe pinnes, in such  
soe that they became wings without feathers like a flin-  
dermouse, flying and carrying vp the head into the aier so  
high, that right soone the sight thereof was lost; the whole  
multitude of people remaining so much astonished, as the

meruaile thereof merited : some looking into the deepe pitt (where they could see nothing) and others lifting vp their eyes into the aire, to see when the head should fall from the heauens. But after they had long mused on the one and the other, they might heare a sound like a winde vehemently comming from farre, and the voyce of a spirite therewithall, saying; You men of *Orbe*, tarrie not for the quick departed from hence to viewe the height of heauen, and depth of earth; but retire your selues, and returne againe hether three dayes hence about this hower, so if all you see the end of that you looke for. This said, sodainly a great thunderclap brake out of an obscure cloud, and after that, a mightie shower; which caused euerie one to retire to his house, attending the third day after according to the premonition of the vnknown voyce. At which day and hower a farre greater number of people assembled thether than befoze of all kindes of ages, attending some miraculous signe, which failed not to happen. For as they wer beholding some vp into the aire, and others into the bottomlesse gulph, behold out of the same they might perceiue the headlesse bodie comming out, and mounting vpon the foresaid scarfold, there knoeled downe befoze the stone, and the vaines (where the head was cut off) opened, and began to shed forth bloud : whereof the bodie tooke part in his hand, and with his finger wrot vpon the stone certaine verses, which afterward were read. And at the same instant they might perceiue from the height of the aier, the flying head to discend with membrane and serpentine wings, diminishing by little and little vntill they came againe into their naturall forme of mans eares, and rested on the pillar vpon an yron pike, where the heads of the executed were accustomed to be set. Thus as euerie one was attentiuely beholding these mysteries with great silence, the head with a trembling, hollow, and deadlie voyce (neuertheles intelligible) pronounced these verses following;

*The*

The Pallaces and Sisters three aloft in haughtie towre  
I late haue seen, & beldameke that ther hath built her bower.  
Above the which consist: a place, where as those blessed wights  
Remain, who haue in faith & troth taken their chief delights:  
But I as one deserving not so high for to aspire,  
(Because deceit and lying both haue been my whole desire)  
Am iudged to the depth. For why, as yet I neuer told  
The truth till now: yet gainst my will it is you may be bold.  
For I must dy, & desperate death you know (& I may waile)  
Must needes descend beneath the tower. Lo thus my speech  
(doth smile.

This said, the head in hideous touning shutting the  
teeth, and closing the eyes, suddenly waxed pale and died:  
and the bodie by and by stretching forth it selfe with pul-  
ling in the veynes fell downe flat dead vpon the plaine of  
the red and black Marble. Then was accomplished which  
was presaged by the two fatall Sisters Calendre & Cla-  
rence at the birth of this childe Desalethes. These verses  
pronounced, were heard and vnderstood of al the assistance,  
set downe in writing or retained by heart of manie, spec-  
ally of me, who keepe them yet in memorie in such sort as  
I haue recited them. Hereupon was the publique Clerke  
commanded to mount vp to the scaffold of Must-dy, and  
looke on the Marble stone, what markes, signes, or letters  
the dead bodie had made with his finger and bloud. The  
Clerke going vp, found vpon the white Marble a blou-  
die writing of ten verses, saying thus (as hee pronounced  
them with a loud voyce.

I haue both tast and touche (by tumbling ouer deepe)  
The pangs of endlesse paines: which being thick & sleepe  
Belowe the Tower round, haue their foundation fast.  
Whereas those wicked wights in prison strong are cast  
Whoe in word ne deed haue taken ought delight.

*But haue the sacred truth repugnd with all their might,  
And for so much as I haue vsed all my life,  
To sowe the seede of lies, of discord, wrath and strife,  
By iudgement tis decreed, and vnto you be it known,  
That corpes & head forthwith into that gulph be thrown.*

This wyting thus pronounced and vnderstood, all the Assistants were of the aduice that this sentence should be put in effect, albeit that they remayned verie bashfull of these nouels neuer before vnderstood of them, either of the round Tower, of the three Sisters, of the olde Dame, or of the obscure and deepe prison, whereof we vnderstand not as yet the substance. Notwithstanding the executioner being sent for, and commanded by the Magistrate, toke the dead and hideous head, and threw the bodie with an yron booke vnto the deepe pit, whereof before we haue spoken, and threw them both therein: from the depth whereof was presently heard a fearefull and lamentable crye, as it were of innumerable persons grievously wailing and desperately howling. And thereupon this depth closed in such firmnesse, that there remained no apparance either of Tower, trembling, or opening of earth; onely there appeared all plaine aboue the earth: and no bruite was anie more heard, but euerie one by reason of the astonishment remained in pleasant silence: and the Sunne began most brightly to display his beames, and thereafter ensued a right faire cleare and beautifull day, which before had been darkened with thicke mists, blacke clouds, and rainie weather.

Beholde the Historie, wherein I haue made thee a verie long, and peradventure enuious digression (quoth the Archier to Franc-Gal) which hath onely been to confirme thy saying verie likely to be true, and by the verses aforesaid agreeing with thy rehearfall, to confirme the talke which thou hast begun, of the immensall Tower, of the  
three

three Stages, of the three fatall Sisters, of their auncient mother Anage, resident in the highest thereof, and of the low and blacke Prisons vnder the foundation of the same. Which talke as thou hast begun, I pray thee goe on forwarde, and make an ende thereof if it please thee. For I haue great desire to heare thy discourse to the ende, to see if thereby I might vnderstand the substance of the beastes, which I haue recited to thee, which me seemeth to bee verie much agreeing with thy forehearsed narration.

I am content quoth Franc-Gall, but let vs rise and followe on our way, and in going I will make an ende of the residue thereof, to render thee part of the pleasure which I haue receiued of thine, which hath seemed neither long nor wearisome, but rather most delectable, for the meruailes which thou hast recited therein, which are verie conformable vnto my discourse, whereby I hope they shall be more lightened and expounded: wherefore let vs rise and be going.

So these two wise men arose, and (forgetting not their armes, baggage, bowe, quiner, bottle, cup, and napkin, after they had once againe regarded the miraculous statues vpon the Tombe, and wished rest to the spirites of the bodies there lying) left the sepulcher, and betooke them to their former way, and first talke, Franc-Gall thus continuing the same.

As we were walking thus, we came to a place where the way was very narrow, and the stones were very high, and we were forced to goe up by a ladder, and when we were at the top, we saw a great city, and we were very much amazed at the sight thereof. And when we were looking down upon the city, we saw a great river, and we were very much amazed at the sight thereof. And when we were looking upon the river, we saw a great city, and we were very much amazed at the sight thereof. And when we were looking upon the city, we saw a great river, and we were very much amazed at the sight thereof.

*Of the auncient Ladie Anange, of her great authoritie  
and puiſſance : of the offices of the three ſatall Siſters  
Cleronome, Zodore, and Termayne, and of the  
cierges which they adminiſter to the Pilgrimes com-  
ming to the Soueraigne Temple.*

## C A P. 12.



**I**n the top of which great round  
towe was a comble in the faſhi-  
on of a round lanterne, ſo clere as  
the bright day, with windowes  
on euerie ſide, in ſuch ſort, that it  
had proſpect euerie way : & there  
within was reſident a great La-  
die, right auncient, and of moſt re-  
doubted authoritie, hauing ſoue-  
raigne puiſſance vpon all that is below her, and caſting her  
views ouer all : whereby only accordingly as ſhe ſtretch-  
ed forth, or retired, raiſed or abaſed her aſpect of vniuerſal  
conduct) ſhe aduanced or arreſted, drew by or put downe  
both men and all humane affaires ſubmitted to her : with-  
out hindrance of anie, who can by no meanes reſiſt her,  
neither ſhe contrariwiſe doo otherwiſe than ſhe dooth : and  
for that cauſe ſhe is called Anange, becauſe of neceſſitie al  
things muſt be as ſhe hath ordeined, and not otherwiſe :  
not that ſhe dooth anie thing with force, violence or extor-  
tion either to nature or reaſon, but becauſe all things are  
gouerned by her onely regard, and reduced to the final and  
right point of her eternall ordinance ; from which ſhe ſuffe-  
reth nothing to diuert, but incontinently cauſeth it ineu-  
itably to returne. So great is the authoritie and puiſſance  
of this auncient Ladie Anange : and ſo did I ſee her in the  
higheſt of the Tower, when the white bird, as I told you  
before) drew my ſpिरित from me with a kiſſe, and eleua-  
ted

ted the same vnto the height thereof. This ancient Labie bath thre fatal daughters, named (as it hath been shewed) Clerondme, Zodore and Termaine, resident below their mother in thre inferiour stages of the Tower; neuertheless both nere and passable the one to the other, & there it was their dutie to receiue the Pilgrimes which would ascend vp to the souereigne Temple, whereunto the waye was verie difficile by reason of the obscure pathes, verie hard to be kept without conduct, and light going before. For which cause these thre fatal Sisters were there constituted in that office to furnish the Pilgrimes travellers with cierges, aswell to lighten them in the waye wherein they are to walke, as also to offer their oblations to God in the souereigne Temple. And they gaue and distributed them not after one fashion, but after diuers sorts, even as by fortune, or rather by secret ordinance they came to their hands: some being great and long, some lesse, and others verie small. The first fatal Sister resident in the inferiour Stage, gaue to euerie one his cierge, the second lightened them, and the third finally put them out, either before or after they were offered vp. Now these fatal cierges were like the Brand of Meleager, and in them consisted the life and death of those who receiued them: and they carried them with such determination, that so long as they burned and gaue light, the person carrying them liued; and incontinently so soone as by the office of Termaine they were put out, at the same instant ended the corporall life of those who carried them. For by the ordinance of Anage, it was necessarie that once they should bee extinguished, either by default, or violence; to the end that in offering them, their saueur might ascend to God, who was worshipped in the ancient Temple, to be receiued or reiected good or euill, according to the matter whereof they were made, and according as they had been vled and handled honestly and purely, or soiled, broken, or polluted fithelie and villainously. And none, or verie few were offered at the sacrifice during  
L
their

their lively light, but necessarily they must be by the three  
 fatall Sisters extinguished, either in default of matter, or  
 violent accident. And yet neuertheles, after they wer once  
 lightened, they remained in the arbitriall conduct, enter-  
 tainment, & gouernment of those who had them in their  
 keeping, with expresse defence of putting them out, but con-  
 stantly and clearly to carrie them, vntill such time as Ter-  
 maine had put her hand thereto. Notwithstanding some  
 either by enuious disdain, desperation, or other euill affec-  
 tion would put them out before the time, and spitefully cast  
 them to the ground together with their bodies dying; o-  
 thers would cut & breake them in peeces of despite. Some  
 thinking to make them burne moze clearly than their sub-  
 stance and wyke would permit, did trouble, snose, reuerse,  
 trauerse and blowe them, in such sort that in a while they  
 consumed them, so as they endured but a shorte space. Some  
 others going about to stiffe, annoynt, & grease them with  
 olde oyles, and other fat liquours, thinking to make them  
 last longer, and adioyne to their first making (being a thing  
 impossible) haue clean contrarie to their opinion enflamed  
 moze abundantly, and consumed moze hastily, rendring  
 mozcouer a smoke of most filthie sauor: but contrariwise  
 others there were, who held and carried their faire cierges  
 in a constant rightnes highly eleuated, whereby they ren-  
 dred light moze apparant & longer shining, aswell to them-  
 selues, as to those who went before and folowed them. O-  
 thers also adioyned thereunto Balme, Myrre, incense, &  
 other aromaticall gummes, seruing not onely to their shi-  
 ning, but also causing them to leaue a most good and graci-  
 ous smell after their putting out, and sacred offering in the  
 Temple, where by the Sacrist Termaine they were extin-  
 guished, and gathered together. Howbeit all of them came  
 not to the terme of receiuing in the end of their peregrina-  
 tion, and offring of their cierges by the third fatall Sister  
 Termaine: but the greatest part failed by the way, either  
 by reason that the matter of the light was of so small du-  
 rance,

rated, as being of pitch, rosell, or serpentine; or for being too little, or ouer small of substance; or by reason their wyke ouer grosse in respect of the waxe, or for that oftentimes they were violently put out by casualties hapning by the way: specially by the blustering of windes; by hurts and embushments of euill encounterie, by rhyues, waters, tempests, & other like accidents, which put out the lightes, and so consequently kill those who carrie them: because they were fatalized as hath been shewed before: whereby it commeth to passe, that the greatest part of the Pilgrimes perish by the way, and neuer arrive at the chieft station of the fatall Sister Termaine, nor yet to the Temple to offer and present the sanour of their cierges.

Thus were these three sisters resident in three lodgings within this great Tower, furnishing to the Pilgrimes the cierges of their conduct, way and life, which the first and highest presented them, the second and lower lightened, and the third and last put out and offered in the Temple. But as the Poet diuinely singeth;

*By fatall sort all things doe fall to ruine and decay:*

*From ill to worse, and at the last consume & weare away.*

Euē so commonly it falleth out, that the first munificences are larger and more liberall than those which followe; as all naturall things are best at the first. So commeth it to passe that the cierges which haue been first presented, haue been fairer, longer, and greater, better fashioned, and of better waxe, and so consequently of longer indurance & clearer light. Likewise the first men who receiued them, were found more greater & stronger (like Giants as they were) to carrie and eleuate them: yea and more wise and apt to conduct and maintaine them, as those who knewe well that their life and death depended thereupon: which they would neither dispaire, despise, nor haue in scorn, but esteemed, honoured, and kept them right dearlie, as the gift and grant of the great King of all kings, in whose honour they would render it againe to him in his Temple in

offer of their last voyage, and to the termination of the last  
fatall Sister Termaine, to whom all in a manner happely  
arrived without anie mal-encounter, trouble, or hurt.

*Of the Macrobian, their vertue and great age, of the  
long life of Franc-Gal, and causes thereof.*

## CAP. 13.



Et amongst all those great light  
bearers, the most prudent & most  
advised of spirite, and the most  
strong and durable of bodie, haue  
shewed themselves to be the blood  
of the Macrobian; who were  
chilozen of a good, sage, rich, and  
noble laborer called Kamat, and  
of a vertuous and excellent Lady  
and singular good Huswife, called Madame Sophroisne:  
who accompanied not themselves with rascals, but on the  
contrarie esteemed it great honour and noblesse to employ  
bodie, members, and spirite to all honest and fruitefull la-  
bor and exterior exercise of the bodie, and interior and tem-  
perate moderation of the minde. And thereby haue sprung  
of their bloods, most mightie Kings, Princes, and valiant  
Knights. Cyrus the most renowned King of Persia from  
them descended, and toke therein great glorie; Agatho-  
cles King of Sicilia thereof vaunted; The good Romaine  
Consull Marcus Curius thereby held himselfe honoured;  
and the worthie Knight Serran thereof made his braua-  
dos: the rich King Hugon labouring in his golden chari-  
ot, thereby kept a magnificall estate, to shewe that he was  
extract of so high and generous a race, as that of the noble  
Lord Kamat and the vertuous Ladie Sophroisne; whose  
successors were called Macrobian, men engendred of good  
laborfull and shamefast blood, vnder good constellation, well  
and temperately nourished with the first and best frutes  
of

of their most wholesome and fertile Region, situate in the high Ethiopia, betwene the East and the South, vnder the most temperate Climate of *Meroë*, abounding in all goodnesse, in sweete and wholesome waters, and in a most pure and beautifull aier, like a continuall Spring; people of a most faire forme of bodie, of members strong and bounteous, of good and liberall spirit, louing and exercising iustice, equitie and liberalitie: reuerently honouring age, their fathers, mothers, parents, and betters, their auncitors, and God aboue al, who is auncienter than all things, and elder than time it selfe. Such were the Macrobian, to whom by fortune or rather by prouidence, happened the first, best, and most durable cierges, which they carrying, keeping and governing wisely, liued two, three, and foure times so long as other men. And to me which am of their race, besel one, deliuered me by Cleronome, long, straight, well waxed and tempered, durable, and of cleare light.

Where is it then (quoth the Archier) hast thou offered it vp already? or hath it failed or gone out by the way. No no quoth Franc-Gall, for if it were soe I should then bee dead. Shewe it me then quoth the Archier, that I might see the fashion thereof. Then Franc-Gall smiling said vnto him thus, how me also thine that Cleronome gaue thee in the beginning of thy Pilgrimage. Mine (quoth hee) I haue none that I knowe of, for I am no Pilgrime, neither haue I any remembrance that euer any cierge was giuen me. Neither hast thou remembrance (quoth Franc-Gal) of thy first sight, which neuerthelesse hath been deliuered to thee; so likewise hath thy vitall light been giuen to thee, as mine hath been to me; but they are vnuisable to our corporall eyes, for euery one carrieth them not vpon him, but within himselfe. Of whose flame we see the naturall heate; which faileth when they be extinguished: by their light we see outwardly and vnderstand inwardly how we ought to guide them in our peregrination, wherein we be Pilgrimes from our youth, and by diuers wayes, aduentures,

uentures, and dangers doe bend our course toward the so-  
ueraigne Temple, where wee are promised rest, as if it  
were to the retourne of our proper and paternall house.  
How (quoth the Archier) I had thought we had not had  
other light than the dayly Sunne, the Moone, and nightly  
starres, and the burning fire to conduct vs. Thou art not  
sufficiently aduised for so good an Archier (quoth Franc-  
Gal) for when this light (which in the beginning is giuen  
vs by Cleronome for our conduct) commeth once to be put  
out, then wee see and knowe nothing, albeit wee haue our  
eyes open, and that the Sunne, the Moone, the Starres  
and the cleere light of candles and torches shine vpon vs.  
Wherefore thou maist well vnderstand, that neither our  
light which we vse in our pilgrimage, nor the cierge of our  
light, life, and way, which was giuen vnto vs by the first  
Fatall Sister Cleronome, consisteth of those externall  
lights.

I vnderstand well nowe (quoth the Archier) oh how  
thou hast lightened the eyes of my vnderstanding, and il-  
luminated my light with the clearnesse of thine! Well at  
this instant begin I to knowe my selfe, and thy myrrall &  
secret talke, which is verie profitable and delectable vnto  
me: wherefore I pray thee (if it shall not be ouer tedious  
vnto thee) to goe forward vnto the ende thereof. Marke  
well then quoth Franc-Gall.

After that I had receiued of Cleronome, this faire cierge  
great, straight, full of good matter, well made, and garnish-  
ed with manie sweet and fragrant sauours, and that the se-  
cond fatall Sister named Zodore had lightened it with a  
cleere and liuely fire: I carried it high and straight with-  
out doing it force or iniurie, in such sort that it hath alrea-  
die lasted and conducted me 900. yeares and more, conti-  
nually flaming, and in most illustrious manner shining as  
well before as behinde me, round about me, below me, and  
aboue me, yea even vnto the heauens. By the cleare light  
whereof I haue walked, & by the benefit of the long daies,  
yeres,

peres, and worlds. wherein I haue liued, I haue scene a  
farre off the gouernance of things both before and behinde  
me: although I see not the one so well as the other, be-  
cause I must tourne my head a tone side to beholde them.  
Likewise I haue beholde the circumstances aswel on the  
right side as on the left: together with the things which  
haue salne vnder my seete, and the imminent perils which  
haue hong ouer my head, from the high point of my Satur-  
nian Planet whereunder I was borne. And all this by  
length of the time haue I scene through the resplendant  
brightnesse of my cierge, by the which I haue viwed the  
causes of things, and the consequences and progresse of  
of the same: and as I was not ignorant of the antecedents,  
so compared I the similitudes, adioyning to the present  
the things to come, so that thereby I haue foreseene the  
whole course of my Peregrination, which hethereto hath  
been long, durable, and diuers, through strange countreyes  
and regions of the East, West, North and South; not  
without suffering of manie labours, trauels, fortunes and  
strange aduentures.

*Of the preuision of the Cataclyfme, of Durat Hippopota-  
me the sea horse, whereon Franc-Gal surmounted the wa-  
ters, whereby he was surnamed Cocke, and of his encoun-  
trie with Priscaraxe a wy-serpentlike woman.*

## CAP. 14.



On one day eleuating my cierge  
towards heauen, I perceiued an  
exorbitation of the eight Sphere,  
from the West vnto the East, &  
contrariwise from the East vnto  
the West, appoaching and draw-  
ing together about the center of  
Aries and Libra, not in stretching  
wise,

wise, of the right course in length, but of exorbitant moving in height and breadth, by equation approaching and drawing together, making two small circles of exorbitance: whereby after long progression of time, this exorbitant moving was come to the point of the small circle: the Zenith being regarded by the Signe of Pisces and Aquarius, of the Planets, of Orion and Hyades: then knewe I well by profe, that the Cataclysm of inundation should be shortly. Therefore for the auoyding of all perills that might happen, I toke in the great riuer of Nylus in Egypt a pong Hippopotame, that is a watrie horse, hauing head and bodie like a horse, but without comparison farre exceeding in greatnes, strength and belly other terrestrial horses, hauing legs accordingly, sauing that the feete finished in large and flat cartilages in the fashion of a gosse foote, for swimming the better: neither had he onely foure feete like a terrestrial horse, but manie and a great number, wherewithall hee cleaued the flouds, and swomme lik a Dolphin: as for his tayle, it was great, long and full of scales like a great fish, flat in his hinder latitude, wherewith he beat the waters, & turned himselfe most readely to what side he would by the mouing thereof: his head he had eleuated great and puifant, carrying in his throate foure great, crooked, and cutting teeth. This horse Hippopotame such as I haue described to thee, and which thou maist yet behold at the nye Port, where I haue left him with my men: (for hee is so great and mightie, that he is able to carie easily many persons, and other liuing creatures, albeit he be a most wicked and dangerous beast, specially when hee hath dronke too much. Neuertheles I handle and tame him so well, that I make him rideable thorough all watets, yea and mayne seas, after that I haue armed him with conuenient harnesse on all sides. Besides this, by a certaine art wherof I haue the knowledge and experieuce, I open his sides, and plant in him great wings, by the aid wherof when he hath spread them in the winde, he goeth faster vpon the waters than the

the fowle in the aier). This great horse Hippopotame being thus prepared to serue me when need should require, one day eleuating my sight, I perceiued already the cataracts of heauen open, the water pot of Aquarius turned vp side downe, the sign of Pisces in exaltation, Orion with his sword cutting the clouds, and the most stinking hogs and the geese behinde me, to noyse the open depths, & unbounded seas. At this great bruite lifting vp my head, I beheld a great and meruailous brook of waters impetuously comming to fall vpon the Region and way wherein I walked, and to ouerwhelme with waues all the pilgrimes passengers in the way, in putting out their cienges and liues; wherefore the soonest that it was possible for me, I toke provision of victualls sufficient for certaine dayes for me and mine who were most able to mount with mee vpon my Hippopotame, by the foreknowledge that I gaue them of this brooke which I saw comming, whereby some believed me and fled to the mountaines, others would not, and so were enclosed with the flouds. I was no sooner mounted, but my Hippopotame was eleuated vpon the waters, which couered all the face of the earth, and filled all the creatures therein. Then began my marinall horse to swim with his flat feete and to spread his wings, which hauing once taken the aire and winde, transported vs into diuers Countries and Regions at the pleasure of the windes, waues, and horse, to the great maruell of the people, who hauing gained the vppermost top of the barraine mountaines, sawe vs ride vpon the waues, a thing of them neuer before seene: wherefore through great maruell which they toke thereat, they cried to vs of all sides with lowde voyces, Gal, Gal, Gal, which in their *Armenian* language signifieth, Surmounting the waters: by admiration thereof, that they sawe me great and puissantly mounted on horsebacke vpon the profound waters, as it were on firme land; whom I went and visited, because I found that the greater part of them were vnprovided of victualls, and hunger

Barued vpon the barraine tops of those high mountaines, and distributed vnto them part of those things whereof I had made prouisiō, especially of wine, wherof I had great plentie, I succoured those which wanted to comforte their heart, for there is nothing that so soone slaketh extreame hunger as the liquour of wine. And because that I gaue them it liberally (be it spoken without blame or reproach) they gaue me the title of Frank, which in the *Celtique* language signifieth liberall and hardie, so that afterwards the name of Franc-Gal remained to mee. Waddest thou then (quoth the Archier) anie other name before than Franc-Gal? Yea (quoth he) my proper name was Dysir, but afterwards I was alwaies called Franc-Gal, which name displeaseth me not at all.

Now tell mee Franc-Gal (quoth the Archier) howe could thine Hippopotame carrie thee so manie dayes without being wearie, or plunging himselfe in the waters, and drowning of thee and thine? Because (quoth Franc-Gal) his nature is such, that so long as he hath aier and winde, according to his wings and his fée in the water, he main-teineth himselfe in his vigour, and getteth more and more force, and new legeritie, fearing nothing but fire & stones: and is neuer perillous or dangerous, but when hee drinketh ouer-much. Wherefore my soueraigne care hath alwayes been to keepe him from his contrarie element, fire, stones, and ouermuch drinking: for the rest he is of the nature of the Cameliō, liuing of the aie and of his watterie element: and so quiet, that when we haue landed, and hee retired his fée, and abased his wings, hee remaineth still, without either kicking or biting, and of as peaceable rest, as he is of terrible legeritie and dangerous passage when his fée are in the water, and his wings in the aie, and his crooked teeth out of his throte. Behold what my horse Hippopotame called Durat is, vpon whom I surmounted the waters, whereby the name of Gal was imposed vpon me.

After

After that the inundation of this great River was come downe, and the Cataclysmic had taken end: being wearie of riding amongst the fishes, I came one day and landed in the Region of *Scythia* called *East Tartaria*: where hauing recreated my spirites with the smell of the new earth lately discovered, and hauing refreshed my bodie with meate and wine, feeling my selfe wearie of trauell, & beaten with continuall showers, I laid me downe vpon the ground on sixe Lions skins sowed together, which for that time serued me against the stoymes, and there I fell in a profound sleepe.

During the which, this vision came to me: It seemed to me, that befoze me grew a faire plant of a flower called double *Sollie*, otherwile named the friend of the Sunne, which altogether seemed to encline towards me, till that it had covered my legs. Wherefoze seeing this faire double flower bending towards me, desire forced me to gather it both branch and roote, and therfoze with my dagger I digged it vp: but vnder the roote thereof I found a serpents egge, which being broken, there issued out the chickin of a *Basilisque*, otherwile called a *Cockatrice*; which incontinencie becomming feathered and waxing great, flew away, carrying my heart with him which he had taken out of my bodie: wherewithall afright, I waked, and founde my selfe embraced and clasped bodie and legs, by some bodie casting it selfe vpon me; which all at once I perceiued to be a yong maiden all naked, & of a great height, whose shape of bodie surmounted the common sort, and of an excellent beautiful face, with bright golden haire, & glimmering like *Phcebus* beames, her face white, and coloured with red like to *Aurora*, her eyes grey and comely surmounted with little browne eye lids, her necke straight and well proportioned, her breast large & highly eleuated with two round and incarnate duggs, her raine broad, her belly round white and faire. But her lower parts, in stead of thighs, legs and feet, finished in a long serpentlike taile, of diuers

colours like shining mayle, wherewith she linked her selfe betwene my legs, and with her faire naked armes, embraced me so about the neck & body, that I could scarce be rid from her without violence to so faire a creature (as she seemed by her superiour parts) so lovingly kissing me: which withdrew me from giuing her anie outrageous repulse. But on the contrarie part this Serpentlike tayle wherewithall I felt my selfe interlaced, gaue me hideous feare, & abhominacion of a creature so monstrous: wherfore tenderly I rid me of her embracements and linkings, and taking her by the hand, asked her what she was, and what she would with me.

I am (quoth the Maide right graciously) daughter of Phoebus and Rhea, created lately in this present place by vertue of the Sunne heating the earth, as yet stinnie with the late inundation, and animated with a good appie spirite, who by the first information rendred my Essence perfect: except, that forsomuch as the Sunne and man doe engender man in their proper and humane forme, and that I (being not engendred of the seede of man, but onely of the Sunne and of the terrestrial humoz heated by the Sunne) could haue but onely the superiour part after the humane forme, and the inferiour part such as the earth could fashion in the forme of a Serpent, neuertheloes not venymous, (although they say, that venym lyeth in the tayle) but of good nature and not hurtfull, as thou shalt wel know: furthermore my name is written on my right arme, which I neither knowe, nor shall knowe but onely by thee: for, for thee, and of thee to conceiue fruite, I am newly sent into the worlde. I vnderstanding this talke, looked vpon her right arme, wherein I perceiued her skin in certaine places gylded like the thigh of Pythagoras, in form of Persian letters, declaring this name Priscaraxe. Of which name well vnderstanding the good signification, and considering this so faire and gracious creature (aibeit monstrous, but for good cause) I spake vnto her in this sort; My swete hart

hart Priscaraxe (for so is your name written, which I pray remember well) I knowe now that in a luckie hower I haue met with you, and for that good fortune I will not refuse you : and forsomuch as I haue found such singular beautie & good grace in your vpper parts, without disdaine of your lowe, terrestriall, & serpentlike vnbenimous parts, I accept you for mine, and will be wholly yours. In saying thus, I embraced and kissed her, and for the pleasure & kindnesse which I found in her, I remained in her companie 32. daies: at what time she felt her selfe to haue conceived, and to be with childe, which was her chiefe and soueraigne desire.

*Of the leane taken by Franc-Gal of Priscaraxe, elected and constituted Queene in high Tartarie, of the homages and fealties taken of the people assembled, and of the creation of the order of her Knights.*

C A P. 35.



The time being come that Priscaraxe felt her selfe to be with childe, I determined to leaue her, albeit that departure from pleasure be grieuous : and notwithstanding her conersation & companie was most agreeable and delectable to me; yet neuerthelesse, the earnest desire of accomplishing a vniuersal peregrination, which of long time I had enterprised, moued me the more, specially beeing so well accommodated with my good horse Durat Hippopotame, verie proper to passe the seas and hugie streames, being sure to finde enough of others to passe on firme land and trauerse the regions. For esteeming the whole earth

(giuen to the sons of men for habitation by the souereigne Lord, who for himselfe hath reserved the Heauen of Heauens) to be but a house and domicile of humane creatures: I accompted my selfe unworthy of the name of a man, and of the household of mankinde, if I shuld not haue seene and knowne all the parts of this vniuersall house: and for that cause had I enterprised the circuite and passing about the whole terrestriall world. For the performance whereof, it was vnnecessarie for me to arrest my self at pleasures, but rather the most sweetly I could, to depart from my welbeloued Priscaraxe: wherfore one day being alone with her, after accustomed solace, I began this talke with her.

My most deare Priscaraxe, there is no companie howe faire and good soeuer it be, but it must in the ende finallie depart, either by death or otherwise; but mortall departure is more grieuous than any other, because it is without any hope of returne: but voluntarie departure is alwaies consolatorie amongst vs that liue, in hope they shall once againe see and be vnited together. Wherefore the separation of vs twaine being once necessarie, will we, or will wee, it seemeth to mee, that it bee better voluntarily made betweene vs, being now liuing, in good health and in perfect amitie; than to abide till wee bee constrained to depart by death in grief & sadnes. And for that cause I haue thought good to signifie thus much vnto you, that within these few daies I must depart from your most louing companie.

At this word Priscaraxe touched to the heart like a sauage beast wounded to the quicke, cried out: O God! who would haue thought it? wherwith, shee enclined her selfe vpon my breast, her voice and spirit through anguish halfe cleauing a sunder, and after a long preclusion & gathering together of her spirites (which of sodaine dolour were banished away) she thus pursued her talke: who would haue beloued (alas) that from so noble nature, could haue issued such inhumanitie that after these pleasures by thee reserved thou woldst haue left her, who begins but now to feele them?

them? O Franc-Gal! is this the franchise whereof thou bearest the name? For pleasure to render me grief, for honour dispraise, for graciousnesse ingratitude, and for loue death? Alas my deare Lord and friend (if thou wilt permit me to vse this name) consider and beleue for certaine, that by thee I am with childe, pea & that of a mercurious Son, as the destinies of my originall haue pronounced. Consider then that a better part of thee, remaineth enclosed and cōiopned with my bodie: which being not able to liue without thee, must of force die; so shalt thou be a murderer both of me and partly of thy selfe. But I beleue not (most deare Lord and friend) that thou hast so hard a heart: wherefore tel me (I beseech thee) in truth whether these be thy words, or but dreamed by my fearfull imagination, which would the Gods it were? And in saying this, she cast her armes about my necke in embracing, familiar kissing, & bedeawing my face with the teares which she shed. Then albeit I was greatly compassioned, yet permanent and constant in mine intention, I said thus vnto her; Priscaraxe my most deare friend, although my departure from thee bee as sorrowful, as my conuersation with thee pleasant; yet is it so that there is nothing more certain, than that within foure daies I shall depart from thee: for so it is necessarie aswell for me, as for the rest of the world, to circuite which, & the things therein contained, I haue an immutable desire, as also to accomplish a certain vow of pilgrimage that I haue made to the soueraign temple, which I neuer saw, neither know where to finde: but I haue vowed, & it becometh me to doo it; neither will I cease trauellling till I haue found it. Why then (quoth she) lead me with you, & leaue me not here desolate in danger of beasts, & men almost wild, more dangerous than sauage beasts: who seeing me (imperfect of humane nature, finishing in forme of a Serpent, enemye to humane kinde) will kill or burne me as a monster, and with mee the fruite which is come of your seede, in my wombe, euen your Sonne, as yet vnperfectly formed:

of

of whom the vaticinations haue promised so great things, that onely might moue me to accept perpetuall companie with you in your farre voyages. My great friend Priscaraxe (quoth I) if I should condescend to your request, made by simplicitie and ignorance of things, and that I should accord to your demaund in leading you with me: truly, vnder colour of friendship and humanitie, I should be a most cruell and vnnaturall enemy to you, & put you, your child and mine, to the hazard of cruell death. For how long the wayes be, how intollerable the trauels, how fearefull the dangers, truly your tender age and weake kinde can hardly gesse: besides that, according to the forme which you haue, you are not able to trauell without legs on the land, nor ride on my horse Hippopotame on the waters. For as boue all, his nature is that he carrieth no female kinde, but he casteth and drowneth it and all the charge therewith: & so should you giue annoyauce to your selfe, to me, & mine, and put vs all in mortall perill. Wherefore it is necessarie that you remaine here in peace and sure rest, where before my departure I wil cause you to haue not onely assurance of your honoz and life, but also authoritie and reuerence to your person. And esteeme not your selfe abandoned of me, seeing that of my proper blood (as you assure me) I leaue you another Me, that is the child engendred by me in you; who shall (vnlesse my augurie deceiue me) be valiant, hardie, and liberall; and therefore so soone as he is bozne (if percase I be absent) cause him to be named Alector. For he is engendred vnder my Planet, and shall be bozne of the daughter of Phoebus in his plaine flower, extract out of the serpents egge, which is your bodie hauing the forme of a Basilisk, that is to say Royall. And so shall be accomplished the dreame which I phantasied when I found my selfe first embraced of you. Wherefore, leauing you a childe of my bodie, you ought not to thinke me wholly seperated frō you. Besides that, be you assured, that so soone as I haue atchieued an ende of my Peregrination, which shall bee so  
soone

soone as possibly I may) I wil returne againe to you with great ioy: and so I promise you by the faith of an honest man and of a true friend. And in signe of this faith promised, I giue and leaue you this ring of golde, empaled with a most fine flaming Carbuncle giuing light in darknesse: whose nature by composition and casting in worke vnder this Syderation is such, that if I be prisoner or locked in a nie straight, it will become pale like the light of a raynie Sunne; if I be sick, it will be heauie like lead; if I be dead, it will wholly lose the splendor, and become blacke like a dead coale: but if I be in libertie and in health, it will hold his viue colour shining as presently you see it. Of al which effects, the signification is witten in these words, *Tant que viuray*. Wherefore my most dearly beloued, I leaue you, and giue you this ring for assurance and gage of my faith, (as the Ring is a proper *Symbol* of loue and faith) praying you in this confidence and sure hope of my return, for the loue of me to keepe, and often to behold it with curious inspection of my behaviour. And this said, I put the ring vpon her finger, & kissed her, which she receiued both graciously and amiably, but with abundance of unfained & heartie teares: neuerthelesse somewhat consoled vppon hope of my faithfull promised returne, shee appeased and comforted her selfe.

Now during the while that I carried with her, I passed away my time principally in two things; the one was to get from the mountaines, rocks, and caues, such dispersed and wandring men, women, & children, as for feare of the Cataclysm were fled for sauegard vnto the high places: where they were become barbarous, and almost sauage. Whome neuerthelesse by sweete language and some good deedes I drew vnto me in the plaine field, & caused them to taste the fruites of the earth, chiefly of grapes, which at that time wer ripe (for it was about the time of Autumne) and ensigned him how to plant and dresse the vineyards, to mollifie them, and to draw the sweete liquoz of wine from them,

them, & thereof gaue them to taste, which they found mer-  
ueilous good and delicate: the like did I of other fruites of  
the earth, as of wheat and other seedes. For befoze they li-  
ued with acornes and flesh, like wilde bozes, wolues, & ra-  
uening beasts; yea some liued with mans flesh, and dranke  
nothing but simple water, or els the milk of beasts, which  
alreadie they knewe well to feede in the pastures of the  
mountaines. Likewise I taught them to cut and fel wood,  
to square stones, to temper fat earth, and therewithall to  
builde houses and villages along the water side for their  
dwellings, and sure defence of their persons and cattell, a-  
gainst the iniurie of raine, winde, and stormes, and against  
the violence of sauage beasts, and to assemble themselves  
by numbers in redoubtable defence against those fierce and  
sauage creatures: exhorting them to ciuil and honest com-  
panie, to mutuall aide, and not one to outrage and harme  
another, to chastize and punish those who hurt one another  
by common accord, and for the executing of Justice to con-  
stitute a wise Gouvernour ouer them, to whom, al with one  
consent shall beare reuerence as alreadie they had done to  
me. All which things they willingly tooke and learned like  
men who are fellowlike creatures, and easie to be discipli-  
ned, and thus they assembled in great numbers round a-  
bout my lodging along the faire River of Tanais, bearing  
honour and obedience to me.

The other part of my pleasure and daily pastime was  
to tame manie wilde hoxses (which in that Region are ex-  
cellent) and to exercise my selfe in hunting and shooting:  
whereby I slewe great numbers of Beares, Bulls, Buf-  
fles, wilde Bozes, Harts, Lyons, Panthers, rauening  
Wolues, Pardalides, Bustells, Howle cats and other  
beasts of most faire and soft skin, whereof there was great  
numbers, and caused them to be sleaed, dyest and perfumed  
by two of my men, who could both do it verie well, & en-  
signe others. Of these faire skins I caused braue apparell  
to be made for my Ladie Priscaraxe (who befoze was clo-  
thed

thet onely in linnen) of so proper a fashion, that they set forth the fairest of her humanitie outwardly, as the necke, the breast, and wrists: but beneath her girdle they covered al the rest of her lower parts, with an ample skole hanging downe to the ground before, and with a long trayne trailing on the ground behinde, and covering her serpenticall taylor: in such sort that those rude and simple people perceived nothing, being giuen to vnderstand that this long trayne behinde the garment was a marke and token of feminine noblenesse, which was measured according to the length of the taylor; which opinion remained yet vnto this day. These braue garments thus made of so faire and variable skins, and ioynd and laced together with rich buttons, costly chaines, claspes of golde, and precious stones, gaue to Priscaraxe an admirable ornament of beautie, with increase of authoritie and opinion of nobilitie, covering her lower serpenticall parts so honestly, whercon shee bare and turned her self so cunningly and so easely, that she seemed to treade little inferiour to a young and wanton wench; and thereon would encline her selfe at pleasure in low reuerence and humilitie to whom and where it appertained: and likewise to raise her selfe right of stature more high than the common sort, as it did become her, which got her great maiestie and dignitie, yea opinion of diuinitie. Having thus adozned her with habits of honour, I assembled al the people in a large meadow round about me (who began already to be somewhat ciuill) and at the sound of certaine musicall instruments which my men had, manie others descended from the mountaines as yet halfe wilde, and ioynded themselves to the troupe: and there beeing mounted vpon a platfome made of boards, and beeing set vpon a bench with the faire and wellorned Priscaraxe, after I had with my hand and mouth giuen them signe of silence, with a high and cleere voice, I began this short Declaration.

The first in-  
uention of  
trained  
gownes, &  
causes why.

You haue known by experience (my friends) how much

your former savage life is amended and bettered in all goods and commodities, by the societie and humane agreement amongst your selues in amitie, peace, and iustice: assuring you (that by how much the more you doe vse and exercise it) by so much shall you be from day to day encreased with goods and felicitie: and shall beare rule ouer savage beasts and cruell monsters, which heretofore haue infested you, surmounting you in hardines, force and legeritie, and were to you verie redoubtable. On the contrarie side, if you plucke vp, contrarie, and outrage one another, you shall be made a pray to them, and your bodies their pasture, and meate for the blacke and rauening birds of the Heauens. For by accord little things become great, and through discord the great doe lessen, perish and fall to nought. Wherefore aboue all things I admonish you to ciuill societie, concord, faith truly holden, mutual amitie, euening of outrage, punishing of the offenders by equitable iustice, the conseruatrix of your common wealth. Which cannot be better administrated nor distributed than by one sole head & Prince to be obeyed and authorised of all. And therefore it is expedient to chosse amongst you one of your Nation, a man of good vnderstanding and naturall iudgement, well ozened with corporall sense and members, good, sage, iust, temperate, knowing all, and known of all: to whom you shall owe all honour, reuerence, soueraigne right and puissance, by homage and faith to him giuen. And therefore chosse amongst you him whom you like best, and after he be informed of the office and dutie of his principallitie, I wil crowne him for your King. At this word, al began to crie with one voyce, *Franc-Gal soit nostre Roy, aultre Roy ne voulons con* Franc-Gal: Let Franc-Gal be our King, we will haue no other King but Franc-Gall. The crie with the beckening of my hand appeased, I answered them thus; That cannot be (my friends) for Franc-Gal is not of your Nation, but a stranger come hether by aduenture: and knowe pee that strange Kings haue seldom been good to the people of whi  
the?

they tooke not their originall: besides, Franc-Gal can not resist the immutable ordinances of the auncient Ladie A-nange of the vniuersall Tower, who hath destined him to visite other people and nations of the world: for he can be with you no longer than the day & hower present. Choose therefore among you the best, wisest, and the most vpright which you think to be in the multitude, and present him to me mounted; whom after I haue informed of his office, I will (with your consent) establish and crowne him King.

At this answer, the poore Tartarians remained sad and sorrowfull: neuertheles they assembled themselves in 24. bands, and out of euerie band (after consultation) was sent one man to speake for al: so were there found 24. excellent men aboue all others, in person, speech, and spirite; who meeting together to communicate the will of the people, they were found all (a great maruell and signe of accord) of one aduice, that is to say, to referre to me the election of their King, whom they would hold firme, stable, and inuolable: affirming and swearing thereto by the winde, & by their *Acinac*, which after their blage is as much to say, as By life and death. Hauing thus heard the relation & delation of these 24. I thanked them and the whole multitude for the good opinion they had of my iudgement. Then rising on my seate with the fair Priscaraxe whom I held by the right hand to the sight of all the people, with a lowde voyce I began as followeth.

Oemen of *Scythia*, seeing you referre to me the honour of this election, and haue so instantly desired me being a stranger for your King; for both which I thanke you: knowe that I will giue you a King in seed extract from my bloud, whom as yet neuer mortal man hath scene; together with a Queene of your countrey and generation: that is, this present yong Ladie Priscaraxe, of such forme & beautie as you see. (At these words Priscaraxe enclined her selfe lowe bending her table in signe of humble thanks, with right agréable modestie: then with a sodain turne of

her taile, she raised vp her selfe in most high forme, surmounting euen the Giantlie height of Franc-Gal himself, which gaue her great apparance of royall maiestie). And to the end (quoth I) you esteeme not her originall nobilitie small: knowe that she is extract and bozne of your land and countrie (which is not small, vnlesse you esteeme your native soyle small) and she is engendred of Phœbus, whom you so much honour and worship: she hath likewise an illustre spirit of vnderstanding, and she is illuminated with a most cleere prudence, and shall iustlie and wiselie rule and gouerne you: her name is Priscaraxe, the signification whereof you may well vnderstand what it importeth. And if you desire a man king, knowe ye that in her and within her bodie you haue one engendred by me (whom you haue so required) extract from the most auncient and illustre bloud of the Macrobian: who, in my iudgement will not forseligne his father. And therefore so soone as he shall bee bozne, (if peradventure I be not returned hether againe, as I hope I shall) I pray you and ordaine that you call him Alestor: and that you take and crowne him with this Helmet to him destined. And therewithall I shewed them a verie little cress of a Helmet, decked with faire Rubies which was ordeined for Alestor: & forthwith I brought out a rich Crowne of gold, wrought with flowers, and enriched with gemmes of all illustre colours, in saying vnto them; behold the royall Crowne prepared by my will, and with good iudgement for my Ladie Priscaraxe heere present, a most faire, wise, and noble woman, daughter to Phœbus, extract out of your land and countrie, and being now great with a man childe engendred by Franc-Gall Macrobius: aduise your selues whether you will take her for your Queene or not? Wee accept her (answered all the multitude with one crie) we accept her and take Priscaraxe for our Queene and Soueraigne Ladie. Then lifted I vp the Crowne on high in the sight of them all, and so easilie set it vpon the comelie head of the faire Priscaraxe,

caraxe, whose haire was according to the Crowne, sa-  
 uing that more naturallie they were browned, cresp'd, and  
 changeable: which being by her graciouslie receiued, she  
 humbly abas'd her selfe by turning her taile, and after  
 that arose by straight and higher than of custome in be-  
 royall resistance with visage full of maiestie; neuertheless  
 amiable and gracious: ouer and aboue her naturall beau-  
 tie, she was attaint with a comelie red shamesfastnesse ele-  
 uated by the fire of modestie, intermingled with ioye, and  
 and lightened aboue with the glittering splendor of golde,  
 and the gemmes of the rich crowne set vpon her head:  
 wherby her forme appeared to the Assistants so faire, Em-  
 pirelike, and almost diuine, that euerie one as it were mo-  
 ued with one selfe spirite cried out, *Vive la Royne, vive la*  
*Royne Priscaraxe:* &c. God saue the Queene, let Queene  
*Priscaraxe* liue, & welcome be the fruite of her bodie, the  
 future King *Alector*. Thus cried the whole multitude at  
 the crowning of *Priscaraxe* so high, that the aier, moun-  
 taines, hills, dales, dalleyes, and flouds ringed again with  
 the resonant reclaime of Eccho. The noyse ceased, I ad-  
 dressed my speech againe to them saying: See people of  
 Tartarie, seeing you haue chosen and consented to the elec-  
 tion of my Ladie *Priscaraxe*, to be from henceforth your  
 Quene, Princesse, and soueraigne Ladie, and thereby haue  
 irreuocably transported in royall right, the supream pui-  
 sance of your persons and substance: come therefore now  
 and doe her faith and homage. Whereto all incontinentlie  
 obeyed, and first of all the 24. chiefe men presented them-  
 selues on their knees, and gaue their faith of homage and  
 obedience in the white hand of the Quene *Priscaraxe*, gi-  
 uing others example to doe the like; who refused it not, but  
 willingly & with a good heart came to doe homage to their  
 new Quene: bringing with them in signe of hono<sup>r</sup>, some  
 boughes from the trees, some garlands of sauage flowers,  
 some branches of the vineyard, others wheaten eares, &  
 bunches of greene grasse: which they strowed rounde  
 about

about their faire Queene : insomuch that the whole plat-  
foyme was strowed, and the Queen all couered with wilde  
saffron and other flowers of the meadow, which verie gra-  
ciously she receiued, and after the homages done, she arose  
in excellent straightnesse, and made them this oration no  
lesse shor't than sweete.

Scythian Tartarians, sit hence at your request the most  
noble Prince Franc-Gal hath constituted and crowned vs  
Queene of this Region, of you the Inhabitants therein,  
and of all that which is in your substance, bodies & goods :  
like as you haue called and taken vs for your Queene, so  
do we receiue you for faithfull men and good subiects, pro-  
mising you Justice amongst your selues, & defence against  
all your enemies, by the grace and wisdom given vs fro  
the Soueraigne, by the commandement and counsel of my  
Lord Franc-Gal, and by the forces and aides of our mem-  
bers, that is of all of you in generall, conditionally that  
you keepe your plighted faith to vs, which being the foun-  
dation of Justice, entertaineth and encreaseth the societie &  
fellowship of men. At this conclusion euerie one bent their  
knees and heads in signe of reuerence and obedience, and  
beeing risen, lift vp by their heads and hands, in signe of  
good will and readinesse to do the commandement of their  
Queene, & soueraigne Ladie. Whereupon I caused to come  
before me and the Queene, the 24. chief men who were the  
fairest, strongest, most burliest, the best and assented and  
speached in the whole multitude, and who had the gifts &  
grace most abundantly : and demaunded of them if they  
would not willingly employ their liues for the defence of  
their Countrey, Common wealth, royal Justice, and of the  
faith & homage which they had promised to their Queene?  
whereunto all with one consent answered, that willingly  
they would. Then caused I them to giue their faith bare  
headed, and kneeling in the hand of the Queene : which  
being receiued with othe of obedience, to sustaine & defend  
her towards and against al: she gaue to each of them a ring  
of

of golde in signe of the honour of Knighthood, which they receiued anon after, and about their necks I put a collar of golde, whereat a Sunne of golde hung; saying vnto them I doe ennoble you, be ye noble men, you and your posterities for euer: conditionally that you commit no treason or felonie against your Soueraigne. Wherefrom they all answered that they would keepe themselves, and thanked me humbly for their enobling, and of the honorable presents receiued of me and the Quene, bowing their bodies and liues for her and me. And all this was done vpon the *Pretours* of *Gazons* in open sight and regard of all the people, who from far beheld this mysterie knowing not what it was, nor to what ende, and marvelled all thereat, finding it notwithstanding verie faire, & hoped asmuch to be done and giuen to them: but the common and ancient proverbe saith, Not all, nor by all, nor to all; and therefore I commanded them to seuerate themselves in small companies by 9. and 9. and to place them in the medowe, and the 24. round about the *Pretours*: which willingly they did, & disposed themselves by 9. and 9. in a companie. Being thus ordered, I sent to euery fellowship a quarter of roasted venison, 3. loaves of bread, and a great wooden tankard full of wine, made with grapes, honnie, and water: declaring to them, that it was the first liberalitie of the Quene towards them at her coronation, & inuiting them to be merrie and make good chere: which they did, as also the 24. noble men which were about the *Pretours*, to whom we likewise sent such meate as we were serued withall. At the end of the banquet, I took my cup of golde full of wine, & after I had presented it vnto the Quene, (who tasted first of it) I lift it vp and gaue signe and token that I drank to all in ioy of my speedie departure: and they likewise on the other side by shewing a signe of great ioy, pledged me with gladsome acclamation. The crie ended, and the multitude appeased, I descended with the Quene, and caused 24. of the sauege beasts which I had tamed to be brought in, together

gether with 24. morions of yron, and as manie corselets, made of the skinner of wilde bores and bulls, which I had taken in hunting, and caused to be dyessed in an herbe called Aarons Oxe, being an herb verie strong, sharp, cutting, hardning and binding leather in a litle season: likewise 24. shields made of Tillac, strengthened with the sinewes of harts and bulls; and 24. lances garnished at the ende with leopards teeth in stead of yron: together with 24. swords whereof I alwaies caried a good number with me, the which I put into the hands of the Queene Priscaraxe. These things made readie, I caused mine owne men to ride the horses, to make them bend, turne, to giue the carriage, to caper, to mount, to leape, and to sling, thereby giuing example of discipline to the 24. strong men so to gouerne and handle them. Then caused I them there to be harnessed with the corselets, and the morions vpon their heads, and then to all and euerie of them I gaue the *Accolade*, & made them Knights. The Queene girded their 24. swords about them and their shields, and I presented to eicher of them a lance and a horse, whereon easily they mounted without putting foote in the stirrops for they were ridden naked, and handled easilie enough for their first riding, together for that they were well tamed and accommodated. After that, for their first exercise and pastime, I caused them to iust and turney with my men: where, after they had encountered with their lances, they laid hands on their swords, which they neuer before had handled, & found them meruailous faire in their glistering splendor; being ioyfull to handle such weapons flaming like the Sunne. Whereby they skirmished so couragiously, that in the end the sport had turned into quarrell, had I not caused them to cease, and euerie one to take his armes againe: exhorting them oftentimes to like exercises without strife, and to all the duties of knighthood, but specially to susteine & defend their Queene Priscaraxe: of whom (with a last kisse and streight embracement without power of speaking of one

one word to her, nor she to me, by meanes of the great sor-  
rowe of heart) I toke my leaue, and of the 24. knights, &  
of all the people. All which followed and accompanied me  
vnto the port and hauē, where my people (hauing trussed  
vp all my baggage) were already gone to prepare my good  
and great horse Durat Hippopotame: whereupon being  
mounted with my companie, he stretched out his long flat  
scute, and raised his wings in the high aier: where hauing  
once receiued winde, presently he carried vs from the land  
into the high seas beholding neuerthelesse the shore, where  
the Scythian men, and the 24. new knights, followed vs  
with their sight so farre as they could see vs, together with  
the Quēne Priscaraxe; whome I had left with a trans-  
pierced heart, whom I neuer since haue scene, and am in  
doubt neuer to see more.

*The apparition and foresaying of Proteus, the returne  
of the Quēne Priscaraxe, her childbearing, & the  
double birth of Alector, his crowning, nourishing,  
and manners.*

C A P. X V I



How so (quoth the Archier) did  
thy Quēne Priscaraxe die then?  
No, no, (quoth Franc-Gal) but  
(as I haue since vnderstood by a  
messenger and letters which shee  
afterwards sent me) after she had  
followed me with her eye, vntill  
she had lost the sight of me, shee  
remained with sorowe and au-  
guish, colde, stiffe, and as it were past her selfe, planted vp-  
on the sea side like a statue of stone, till they might see the  
sea moue and boyle, and from the bottome rise out on the  
foming water a great troupe of Phocques or sea calues:

## The first part

and after them launched from the deapth a great Seaman,  
olde and ancient to looke on, with long grey haire, white  
beard, and monstaches; dropping with salt water, his skin  
yellow, rough and full of scales; his armes finned with the  
finnes of fishes, his body naked in humaine forme vnto the  
nauell, the residue finishing in a grosse and great taylor of a  
fish, wherewithall he beate the water, and made it bound vp  
in sprinkling, and bedewing all his Phocques which hee  
chaled before him with a great wand made of a Whales  
bone which he carried in his hand: who beholding Prisca-  
raxe with his green and ougly eyes, foze told her these pro-  
phetical verses which I haue here written in the barke of  
a tree. And therewithall Franc-Gal pulled out of his bo-  
some, a roule of a white Phylire, wherein were written cer-  
taine verses, which he read, and pronounced to the Archier  
in this sort.

*Like as the time, once being past, cannot retorne againe;  
Euen so the man which now departs (though it be to his paine)  
Vnto this place, no more shall come. For why in countries strange  
The destinies appointed haue, that he long time shall range.  
Wherefore thou Queene Priscaraxe now, no longer him attend:  
For once within eight turnes of Moone, there shal of thee descend,  
A fayre and noble bird; the which shall be of double birth:  
And at the last (as King) he shall bee crown'd with iouis & mirrh.  
Yea be a worthie Knight shall be, and of such valuer rare,  
That euen his lookes shal cause the proud, & stronger sort to feare:  
By vertue of an inward spirite, that shall be him affinde  
Or rather (to discric the trueth) descend to him by kinde.  
Yet nathles thou shalt (of him) haue little cause to ioy:  
Yea short the time shall be, that thou with him shalt play or toy:  
For scarsely fledgd, with wings yspread, his soaring flight shall take.  
By cutting of the Ayre, and shall his proper nest forsake  
A loftier seate for to obtaine. Wherefore when time shall come  
That he will needs from thee depart, doo not withst and his dome:  
For if thou wouldst, thou canst not striue, against the wil and minde  
Of the superiall powers, who haue this los to him affinde.*

*But*

But now (O Priscaraxe) hencefoorth (it shall with thee proceede :  
 Leaning three Faons in Gal his nest, extract of Peacocks seede)  
 Thou shalt depart out of this soyle, to seeke with wastfull chere  
 The fragrant flowre of withered tree, whome thou dost loue so dere.  
 And then not finding that thou seekest by long and lingring paine,  
 The perfect shape of humane kinde, & new name shalt obtaine :  
 And with a worldly King (as Queene) thou shalt a while remaine  
 In blisfull ioy, upon the coast of fruitefull Aquitaine.  
 And of thy seede shall come the first of all those worthie Wights  
 Which after to the house of Lux, shall giue their shining lights.  
 By twelue faire signes, so shalt thou liue in perfect rest and peace  
 Till at the length through curious care who will not seeme to cease  
 (Because thereof thou takest name) to cast her eye aside  
 And that disclose, which thou hast sought, with al thy care to hide.  
 And when those secrets thine shall be disclosed, in mornesfull wise  
 Thou shalt depart that sappie soyle, pearcing the heauens with cries.  
 Still loosing more & more the forme and figure of thy Syre  
 And shalt vnto thy Mothers shape thy selfe at once retire.  
 Now therefore get thee to thy house, & see thou looke not backe,  
 With carefull eye keepe thou thy child, that nought he seeme to lack,  
 And if thou wouldest learne his name, that doth these things disclose:  
 Knowe that it is olde Proteus, which neuer yet made lye.  
 These diuine verses pronounced (quoth Franc-Gal, con-  
 tinuing his purpose) the old man plunged himselfe to the  
 bottomie of the Sea with his troupe of Sea calues, so that  
 nothing remained to be seene but the troubled superficiali-  
 tie of the water, and this paper of the barke of a white Phy-  
 lire tree, swimming to the shore, which was taken vp and  
 kept, and afterwards sent to mee written in such verses as  
 thou hast heard.

After then that this propheticke was pronounced and vn-  
 derstood, the knights who were about the Queene, and had  
 seene, heard, understood, and kept the prognostication of  
 Proteus, came towards her to comfort her, and leade her in,  
 with all the people consolating her, and so two of those  
 knightes took her by the armes to comfort & lead her away.

## The first part

So they returned backe, the Quene Priscaraxe sliding so easily vpon her serpenticall taile (being hidden and covered vnder her long trained gowne) that her going seemed diuine, yea like the Gods (who go without mouing fete or knees): the rather because she was so well apparailled, richly decked, and crowned with this illustrate crowne, that it made her to shine like the daughter of Phœbus. And when they were come to the Pallace which I had caused to bee begun, and well aduanced, the Quen Priscaraxe (hauing sent away the multitude populaire, who had folowed her in admiration & reuerence, & thanking them of their paines) retired into her lodging, and all the people into their houses and cabins. But the 24. knights made their habitation the honestest that they could, round about the Pallace royal, to be alwaies readie at the commandement of the Quen: who (for honour and for pledge of their fidelities towards her) took 12. yong boyes, and 12. yong maides of the children of the 24. knights, of either of them one to her seruice, whom she caused to be clothed and decked with faire skins and precious iewels, which I had left her: governing and maintaining her self in such sort, that she was beloued and honored of all. And the popular people of all their fruits, milch cattle, venisons, foule, fish, and to be brieft of all that they got by pray or conquest, would giue her the first presents, likewise did the Gentlemen knights, who aboue all things honored and serued her, and made her to be feared of her subiects, by their ordinarie exercises of armes & chivalrie, which they vsed euerie day before her Pallace, continuing and encreasing better and better. The Quene in the meane season became greater and greater, insomuch that at the ende of eight moneths being one night a bed in her secret chamber all alone (as one who for her lower parts kept her self the most couert that might be, so as ther was none but two damselfs onely, the one called Pistle, and the other Siopie, that were priuie to her serpents forme) the angushes and paines of childbirth came vpon her: where af-

ter long fluxions of great dolour, she brought forth a great  
lump in the figure of a long round egge, farre exceeding in  
bignes the egge of an Ostrich, of substance, skinnie, white,  
cleare, and shining like a transpiercing chistall, so as with  
in she might behold a most faire childe swimming in cleare  
water: whereof this massie lump was full, and the childe  
wound and wrapped vp, in the midde thereof. Which the  
mother seeing knewe not what to do, either to breake this  
lump to take out the naked childe which she long desired,  
and whereunto motherly loue sollicitud her, or els to leaue  
it whole for feare of hurting the frute within it, which mor-  
tall feare forbade her. Wherefore at length she concluded to  
let nature worke: and for that cause she kept it alwayes in  
naturall heate neare to her bodie and naked flesh, and in the  
most hot and couert places; in the night she put it in her  
bed, and in the day vnder her fures, vntill the end of nine  
dayes, that in holding it betwene the palmes of her hands  
(which are of most temperate heate) and warming it with  
her breath, beholding still the enclosed: sodainely it began  
to vnfold the members, stretching out the bodie, armes,  
and legges, and to turne round, in such sort that it brake the  
shell wherein it was enclosed, and so came forth into the  
hands of her mother, who receiued with great ioy this child  
twise borne, crying in the infants voyce for the new sent of  
the ayre, at the voyce whereof the two familiar damosels  
Piste and Siope came in, who took it and washed it with  
water and wine luke warme: and being once washed, it ap-  
peared so faire as it was merueilous to behold, & so white  
as snowe, with frizled haire as yelow as gold, the bodie  
great and strong as it were of the age of thre yeares,  
straying it self, and incontinently going alone: and which  
is moze, it began to laugh and play with the damosels, and  
so soone as it saw the Sunne it lift vp the head and eyes, in  
knowledge of his mothers Sonne, and saluted it by and by  
with loud voyce: but somewhat lisping in singing these  
words, I salute thee. Whereat the Quene and damosels  
being

began to laugh hartely, although they were verie much abashed thereat : the rather for that hee was bozne booted with buskins of siluered skales and spurred with gilded spurs, in token that he should be a magnanimous knight. And it is verie like, that for so much as he was bozne with such armes, that nature (for not hurting the body of his mother) had provided this shelly vessell to enlose him withall. Who after he was censed, hee was brought and rendred to his mother, who receiued him with great ioy, and remembryng the name which his father had ordeyned, called him after this maner; Alecto faire child, the Soueraigne encrease in the vertue, honoꝝ, liberalitie, hardines, and pꝛowesse, for of beautie thou hast not sayled: and therewithall shee kissed him right tenderly. The Childe as it were vnderstanding her voyce, began right gracionously to smile, and by a swete laughter began to acknowledge his mother, who caused to call and assemble the 24. knights, with a sufficient number of the common people, to whome shee shewed the faire childe, declaring to them that it was conceived by Franc-Gal, whereof they were all glad; and accepted him for their King to come, and for that cause in their pꝛesence, put vpon his head þe vermilion crowne which Franc-Gal had left for him, which becommed him the most properest that might be, and he planted it so naturallie on his head, that it neuer after from thence departed. After this the Quene presented him her vermillion nib of her white dug, that he might suck, but he obstinately refused it; and when she would instantly haue applied the end thereof to his mouth, he turned away his face, and began to crie aloude this Phrigian word Beco, beco, which is as much to say as bread, bread: then did they present him bread, which he ate together with roasted flesh, with a good appetite, and like wise both cheese and fruite; and dranke without difficultie both milke, and wine of honey. Therefore from that day forwards, hee was nourished with whole meates, wherewith he grew and fortified so great, memꝑous, and strong.

strong, that he grew thre time so much as other children, in such sort that at five yeares end hee was as corpulent, puissant and right of his members, and as prudent and advised in his spirit, as though hee had been fiftene yeeres fully compleat. And from that time, he began to tame horses, to runne the hart, to hunt the wilde boare, to breake lances against the ground, to skirmish, waste, vault, leap, throw the bar and stone, to runne the stave, swim in the water, to assault and cline high trees and walls; in such sort that of all the young squires of 20. yeares agethere was not his match, although hee had not full size; chiefly in hardines of enterprise: nor more vertuous in franchise & liberalitie, especially towards the damosels of the Queene, and all other young and faire maidens and women: towards whom he began already to be so enclined and giuen, that he could not bee without their companie; so addicted was he to present the humble service of his gentle person to young and faire damosels and other maidens and women: yea and by reason of the entier familiaritie which hee had with his mother (being one of the fairest creatures in the world) he assayed to returne to the place, from whence he was issued. Which thing the Queene perceiving, and fearing least his over hardy youth through ignorant simplicitie should do some outrage to honour and nature, like a most wise woman, determined to reare him out of his nest, and to send him into some place where he might finde me.

*Of the perigrination of Franc-Gal, through the world :  
of the newes receiued from Priscaraxe, his letters and presents sent back to her, to Alector, and to the foure and twentie Knights, and what issued thereof.*

## CAP. XVII.

**N**ow was I entred into the fift yeare of my perigrination: where, leauing Tary situated in the great land of *Imans*, I mounted on the Sea upon my great horse Durat Hippopotame in the  
harbores

harbourles goulph of Pont Euxin, and hauing passed the large  
 Proportion therof, and entred into the Mediterran Seas by  
 the straights of Hellespont & the arme of S. George, I di-  
 sisted (towards the East and South vppon the coast of Asia  
 Minor) Natholica, Phrygia, Pamphilia, Cilicia, Carama-  
 nia, Suria, Egypt, and the seauen moutches of Nilus, Lybia,  
 and Barbary euen to the Mount Atlas. And towards the  
 North and West, I discouered La Maree de Peloponnes-  
 se, and after that passing the hill of Isthmia I boarded the fa-  
 mous ports of noble towne of renowned Greece, aswel in  
 the seas of Negropont, as of Archipel: without leauing one  
 Isle, neither Rhodes, Candy, Lango, Metheln, nor Malto,  
 nor the disperced Isles; where my Hippopotame aboyded  
 not, and brought mee where I might descend. Likewise in  
 the firme lands of Macedonia, of the gulph of Lartche of E-  
 pidaure or Albany, and of the fore of the smoking Moun-  
 taines. In which place myierge of sight, life, and way, had  
 like to haue bene extinguished, and I and all my people in  
 perill and danger. For from these Acroceraunes and light-  
 ning mountaines, woele multitude of wicked spirits aswell  
 ayre as watric, deligentious (as is terrible) of the good ad-  
 uancement of humaine kinde, or rather of my ouer hardy ex-  
 perience in daring to attempt and proue their elements of  
 water and ayre being vnaccustomed to man; and beyond the  
 course of his condition: which damageable diuels with the  
 wicked winds of Cecias and of Turbin, heaped together  
 ouer mee and round about mee, grosse cloudes like great  
 mountaines, one linked in another, black, leuid, heauie, sul-  
 phurian, hot colos, and coole heats, beating and striking the  
 one against the other in fearefull breakings, whereby and  
 whereout abundant and often fire flashes, & coniscations  
 proceeded, horrible thunders abounded, redoubtable light-  
 nings issued, and most hard and penetrable stones fell, toge-  
 ther with wastling winds and sounding tempests. By and  
 through al which perilous moliments these wicked Cacode-  
 mones enuious of the prosperitie of man, so stirred & inqui-  
 eted the waues of the seas, that sometimes they were eleuated  
 aboue

about the clouds, and of a suddaine againe into the very bot-  
 tomes, fighting and breaking their waues, and seeking about  
 al to thrust my horse Durat Hippopotame against þ craggie  
 rocks & stony cliffs, or els to burne him with their hot and ar-  
 dent lightnings which 2. things were the chiefest & greatest  
 to be feared. But he holpe himselfe so well, with his flat feet  
 and with his strong and puissant tayle, ruling the torment of  
 the waues that he saued both himself and vs, who were trem-  
 bling with feare of the present death hanging ouer our heads.  
 And albeit these tempestuous sprites did so charge him with  
 al their force that they made him to abate & strike his wings,  
 and so tormented, heated, and altered him, that hee was con-  
 strained to drinke, wherby he became (according to his nature  
 as hath been said) more dangerous, furious, vtractable, and  
 perilous, insomuch þ what w force of suddaine leapings, rude  
 flingings, prompt windings, & often risings, hee had almost  
 drowned vs in the Ambracian gulph. But I kept him so nar-  
 rowly, hild his bridle so closely, & his crupper so highly, that I  
 made him rise by & spring out into the plaine seas. And then  
 came to my memory the auncient lady Anange who by vne  
 imagination aduised mee to beare by the cierge giuen mee by  
 Cleronome, & lightned by zodore. The which hauing reared  
 on high, & ventiled to make it burne more high and cleere I  
 might behold two celestial lights, proceeding from the high-  
 est, to come & ioyne to my light: by vertue of that which toge-  
 ther with mine endenour, knowledge, & strength al this wick-  
 ed & wandring sprites, ayry and watry, al aduerse and trauesse  
 winds, flotes, waues, hopplings, sinkings, thunders, light-  
 nings tempests & al other torments departed at an instant, &  
 returned to the tops of those Acrocerean mountains, where-  
 as yet they rage, & diuelishly lighte: wherby they are called of  
 nauigators the hills of diuels. These wicked spirits retired in-  
 to their Acrocercanall castles, the Sea in the space of two  
 houres being settled, became so tranquil, calme, quiet and e-  
 quall, that it seemed nothing but a field of glasse; sawing þ on  
 the top thereof floated the nests of some Sea birds, builded  
 cloased, and enterlaced with bigne twigs and eares of corne,  
 by such naturall architecture, that with paine could a man

break them with the blowes of a hatchet, & of such faire and artificiall building that no basketmaker or topiarie workman could fashion the like. And this was in the time of the Brume about the 14. of December and wintrie Solstice when the Sunne entreth the Tropick of Capricorne; whereby I knew that þ birds swimming in those faire nests were called Halcyones, who in this time doe build, couer, and hatch their yong: to which birds, nature hath granted thus much grace and priuiledge, that for the space of 14. dayes, the waters and winds seeme to obey them, and in this time (which is the sorest part of winter) to appease their rigor, and to moderate themselves, in such peaceable tranquillitie, that the ayre and Seas are in rest, and perigrinations sure, which I think to be done by a secret fauour of nature to this little bird; whereat I was much amerailed, & could not finde the cause for what vtilitie either of the world, or of this creature: the most wise Lady Dame Nature was so fauorable to these little birds, as in this peruerse time to giue them þ tranquillitie, which she refuseth so affoord vnto me; which to my thinking is vnworthily done. Wherefore eleuating my cierge higher to consider the cause more metaphysicallie, I supposed the cause of this tranquillitie, to be the returne of the Sonne (who is the most illustrate Lord, and ruler of the inferiour things) into the Tropick of Capricorne. But as I was resolving on this poynt, behold a voyce which seemed to issue out of the mouth of my horse, saying:

*Tis not as thou dost think, Franc-Gal, this calme & quiet space  
Of wind and seas, or dayned is in figure, signe and grace  
Of one, I mean the child of peace, the high & Soueraignes sonne  
Who in the time of quiet rest into this world must come.  
To bring to them th' eternall peace, that will receiue the same  
With ioy; or els refuse it to their owne confused shame:  
Ne yet is this tranquillitie in sandur or respect  
Of this small bird, who by foresight this calme doth not neglect  
To close & hatch her tender yong, when stormy winds do cease,  
To show that wealth doth most abound in time of rest & peace,  
Inquire*

*Inquire therefore no higher cause, we make no more a doo:  
But keepe by course, and take the time while time dooth serue*

And hereupon the voyce ceased, which seemed to proceed out of the throte of my horse: whereat I was sore abashed and astonished; and for that cause I demanded and saide, how cometh it to passe Durat, and when and where hast thou learned to speake and prophesie? But he answering me not one word, turned his head toward the West, and toke his direct course with enlarged feet, and wings hopped vp, so that within a while I arrived at the ports of Dalmace and Sclauonia in Illyrica, and so passing through the insatiable thotes of Scilla and Charibdis alongst the coast of Melisina and Rhogium, I discovered the Isles of Sicilia, Sardinia, Corfica, & all the coast of Apulia, Calabria, Naples, Italy, and entred into the arme of furious Adriaticum; where at that time the rich towne without land was vnsounded: and so passed by the coast of Lygorne, and ouertooke the ports de la Luna, passed by the happie Gaule Narbonnoys, and from them coasted the occidet sea Hispaignia vnto the pillers of the high mountaine Calipe and Abyle; wherethe great Ocean Sea maketh way to passe into the Mediterrane Sea, and seperately it selfe into the great Asia, the rich Aphricque and the populous Europa. And in all the places where my Hyppopotame toke land, there let I him repose certaine daies: and in the meane while, vpon other terrestiall horses, or on fote (as thou seest me now, if the way were not long) I trauesed the countries and Mediterrane Regions, visited the townes & people to learne & know their languages, lawes, manners, and fashions of liuing commending them if they had wealth, and helping them if they had lesse, according to the wisdom which the soueraigne had graunt vnto me. In recompence wherof I returned from them loaden with honours, graces, riches, presents, substance, and victuals; wherewith I charged my good horse Durat for the provision of my voyage.

Now as I was repolling my selfe, one day arrived a messenger come towards me on the behalfe of the Quene Pri-

## The first part

caraxe, who had followed, and sought me by sea and land continually and all places, demanding Franc-Gal the great knight upon the flying and swimming horse, of whom he had heard newes in all places by euident tokens, yet neuertheles he had erred & wandred by sea two whole yeres before he could meet me: until such time as I resting at Cales he had means to finde me, where he presented me letters of credit sent by the Queene Priscaraxe containing partly þat which before I haue reckoned to thee, without forgetting þat faire child Alestor who was twise bozne, the maner how, & his suddaine growth: but about all things shee sent mee word, how that ordinarily beholding euery day and houre, the ring which I had left with her, wherein was set the changeable Carbuncle, oftentimes she had found it somewhat changed, one while being pale, another while darke, another while clere & shining: but that in the 4. yere of my departure the 14. of the Moneth of December (which was the day wherein I was tormented in the gulfes of the Diabolicall mountaines) in beholding my ring, she perceiued it very pale, ashy, & almost extinct of all þat light. And thereupon she had dispatched this messenger to go seeke me through all seas & lands, & to enquire of my health, well doing, & fortunes; and to reckon to me hers, such as had happened to her since my departure, requiring me right affectionally to returne shortly. And for that she willed me to giue faith and credit to the words of the bearer, very curiously I asked him of such things, as had happened since my departure: whereto he answered me very assuredly, beginning at the apparition of Proteus the old man of the sea, of his propheticke written in the barke of a tree, which he deliuered mee, and is that which thou hast seene, (O Archer) vnderstood and read. Then rehearsed he me the exercises of the knights, the honors, duties and presents done to þat Queene: her childbirth, þat double natiuitie of Alestor, his coronation, nurture, maners & exercises, and his suddaine aduancement & growing. Whereof I had such ioy at þat heart, þat I could conceiue no greater. Finally he recounted to me from point to point all things in manner & forme, as I haue made the narration: thus hauing heard all, I caused him to rest himself, & made him good there for certaine daies.

daies. And the whiles I wrote an answer to my most wel-  
 beloved Priscaraxe, willing her to maintaine her self alwaies  
 in roiall authoritie and maiestie, with sure and ioyfull hope  
 of my returne, if death, sicknesse or prison did not let me: ma-  
 ry it was first requisite for me (by force of my destinites) to cir-  
 cuit and compasse the countie of land and sea, untill such  
 time as by continual going forwards, I was returned to the  
 place where first I departed, which could not be done so hope-  
 ly, praying her the whiles to entertaine her selfe with her  
 knights and people, in peace and Justice, in vertue and ho-  
 nour, nourishing and bringing up her sonne Alecto well and  
 wisely, causing him diligently to exercise all honest and vertu-  
 ous actions meet & worthy for a young prince, which should  
 be the greatest pleasure that I could of her either take for or  
 receive. The letter after this tenour closed & sealed, I wrote  
 another chapter to the 24. Knights in generall, willing and  
 commanding them to maintaine & keepe their faith and obedi-  
 ence promised & sworn to their Quene Priscaraxe, to aid &  
 assist her in the maintenance of Peace & Justice, & honourably  
 to keep the noble estate of Chivalry & exercise of armes. And  
 for the better maintenance thereof, I sent the in a little packe  
 for that cause expressed matter & appoynted; 24. steeles & accom-  
 plet armors of double metall, & so many triangular & guilded  
 shields azure & painted with divers colours and figures of  
 armory in proper devises, & as many strong lances of Sapin  
 headed with yron and cheate with ball 24. paire of spurres, the  
 blage wherof they had not as yet experimented albeit they  
 had scene a certaine forme of spurres borne with Alecto. As  
 for the Quene Priscaraxe I sent her a double collar of grosse  
 round pearles, & to Alecto a right faire sword of fine Cha-  
 lybian azur (forged by the Chalybes, people in Hispania be-  
 ing singular workmen in yron and Steele) damasked the gard  
 and hilts being of hard Steele wrought in weathed serpents  
 by a most subtil linking amelled and guilded upon the skale,  
 their eyes being of little cleere Saphirs the poygne being of  
 of L. yron & the pommell of massie gold wrought with the  
 head of a lyon, the two eyes being two rubies, & beares of the  
 fringe of fine gold weathed & hanging down: & the top of the  
 pommell

gommell was fastned with a grosse diamond: the scabard was couered with the skin of an Adder, the sayrest and best remarked that a man might possibly see, all traced naturallie with lines of gold, or at least seeming to bee guilt, so blew as Azure, so red as blood, green like the emerald, violet in flowre, and white like the colour of Aluorie: and betwene the lines in the black spot, it was mayled with lesser shales like silver: whereby it appeared by day so sayre and rich, that no work of silver and gold might compare to this naturall or aluorie: and that which is more, by night it was so clere as a lampe rendring light and splendor sufficient to see seauen paces round about it: for such was the naturall proprietye of the Adder as I perceiued one night, when to take my rest I was gone a land on the coast of Barbary, where by the proper clerenes and nightlie splendor thereof, I discovered this kinde of serpent. Therewithall being after my first sleepe awakened, and merueiling to see in the sand such a strange remouing lightning, I crept neere it, and beholding it to be a kinde of serpent; I set my foote on her head and slew it: neuerthelesse for all it was slaine, yet did not the skin thereof lose the splendor, but remained shining, albeit not altogether so lively and faire off shining, as it did being alive: yet was it of naturall substance so clere and shining that all the circumstances of the place by two great saddomes were lightened and easie to be seene. Therefore hauing reposed there all the night, in the morning I beheld the Adder so shining by night, and seeing the skin thereof so faire, so variable, speckled, barred, and mailed with gold, silver, azure, purple, sandal, and all other faire colours, I caused it to be fleane, clenfed & tanned in the barke of Cassia and Cinamom, and afterwards made thereof a scabard for the good and rich sword which I sent to my Sonne Alecter, with the other presents: which being laid in chests of Sapin, I caused the to be put in a little barke well victualed and furnished with Marriners, & other things thereto necessarie. So giuing to the messenger a rich Cassock of crimson veluet buttoned with gold, a doublet of pellowe waterie silke chamblet, and a hat of Albany couered with

with clere blew like velvet, broyded and barred with circles  
in snares of stone, and knit strings of thred of gold, with a faie  
bowe of Bubalins hozne, and a quiver of a Tayzōs skin ful of  
arrowes, feathered with rauens feathers, I licensed him to de-  
part, and sent the letters & verball answere by him, with com-  
mandement to declare that which he had seen of mine estate.  
So departed hee and went his way, and sayled without any  
hard encountry, torment, or ill aduenture, till hee arrived in  
Scythia; where he hauing taken lande, mounted vp into the  
pallace of the Quēne Priscaraxe: to whom (as I haue vn-  
derstood since by my Sonne Alektors arriual with me) hee  
presented my letters, presents, and giftes sent to her, to Alec-  
tor, and to the 24. Knights, who were assembled in the  
Quēnes chamber to heare newes of Franc-Gal (which is I  
my selfe) whom they hold for their Soueraigne. The letters  
vnderstood, they accorded very gladly thereunto, and receiued  
the presents most agréably: specially Alektor who could  
not fill himselfe with pulling out, beholding and shaking his  
excellent faire sword. The messenger being in the order that  
I had apparrelled him in, and ready in the audience of all the  
assistance, recited all that hee had seen and vnderstood of me,  
with the great honours and praises of my vertues, prowesse,  
worthy reuengances, meritorious liberalities, Justice, & good  
ensignements, which he heard reported of me through all the  
places where I had passed, and where he had followed mee:  
whereof they were all most glad, specially my Lady Prisca-  
raxe, who, with a swete remembrance mixed with sorrow  
and ioy, could not abstaine from weeping incessantly before  
all the knights; who after the message declared, comforted  
and consoled her: and she the more to encrease her ioy, put  
the rich double collar of Pargarites (which I had sent her)  
about her neck, and invited the 24. Knights to supper, who  
departing from thence, went to arme themselves in the new  
harnesses which I had sent them, and to put on their spurs  
which they neuer before had vsed, and mounting on hozback  
went to Iust and proue their new armours, which merveil-  
lously pleased them, as well for the brightnes of the burnished

yron flaming like the sonne, as also for the sound and clatter-  
 ring of the harnesse, and for the beautie of the helmets and  
 shields painted and gilded. But if there were no man to  
 whom these habillements of such hard and impenetrable y-  
 ron, and of such resplendent splendor, seemed hane: yet was  
 Alecto cleane raiſhed with admiration, in such sort that  
 forgetting all wantonnes and lone, he desired nothing more,  
 than to be made Knight, to the end he might weare such war-  
 like habits, and see himſelfe once armed and mounted on  
 horſeback, garniſhed with ſhilde and ſpeare, as for a ſworde  
 he could haue no fairer nor better, than that which I had ſent  
 him. In theſe thoughts and deſires Alecto beheld the  
 Knights, being al armed in white, and to proue their ſpurs  
 began to prick their horſes, who (being not long beſore  
 ſavage, neuer accuſtomed to bee tickled in that order) began  
 to runne with the hidle betwene their teeth, to ſing, and  
 leape ſo rudely that a man could ſee nothing in the ſhadowe  
 but Knights abated to the earth and vnbidled horſes run-  
 ning through the field. Notwithſtanding they mounted a-  
 gaine, and picking their horſes more moderately, accuſto-  
 med them by little and little to the ſpurte and hidle. So  
 Juſted they certaine houres, and fought with ſwords,  
 hatchets of armes and clubs, hauing moſt great pleaſure to  
 heare their hard armor ſo to ſound, and to giue one another  
 ſuch great blowes without hurt. Thus Juſting and fight-  
 ing a ſpace for their exerciſes, euerie one went to diſarme  
 himſelfe, and afterwards came all to ſupper into the pal-  
 lace where the Quene made them right good and ioyfull  
 chere. And after much talke at ſupper held of mee, of my  
 liberalitie towards them, and of the beautie and bountie of  
 the armes wherewithall I had garniſhed them, in whoſe  
 brightnes they beheld their valour, as Ladies do their beau-  
 ties in Chriſtall glaſſes: vpon ſure confidence therein, they  
 enterpriſed an expedition to goe make warre vpon the  
 monſterous and ſcarce beaſts keeping their Caves in the  
 Mount Imaus, who from day to day iſſuing out of their hol-  
 lowe

lowe rockes spoiled their cattell, and destroyed their flockes: and from thence to passe the foresaid mount of Imaus to fight with the Giants of India: who oftentimes accustomed to enter vpon their marches, and to ravish their saye wiues and children. And vpon this concluded deliberation (which afterwards was accomplished) euerie one rettyed himselfe to rest. But Alector who had gotten the flea in his eare, with the desire which he had to be made Knight, and to beare saye white harnesse, could not sleepe: for, the gnyng of horses, the bruit of armour, the clattering and byssing of lances, and the blowes and strokes of swords, which hee thought alwayes to heare, awakened him vncessantely; neither did hee ought but studie whether hee might depart before day without taking leaue of his mother to goe seeke out Franc-Gal his Father, whose renoume pycked him forward more than any other thing: but considering on the other side that it should be villanie and dishonour to himselfe, and grieve to the Quene his carefull Mother: Motherlie pittie and naturall honestie willed him to demand lycence of her, which hee hoped (his intent considered) should not be denied him: and vpon this resolution hee slept till the morning; which being come he speedily arose and appareled himselfe, and so came against the rising of the Quene to giue her the Boniour, and in humble reuerence presenting himselfe to her on his kness, hee began his pretended suite in this manner.

Madam, the birds of Heauen holding of the elementarie purenesse of the ayre, and resenting in part somewhat of the celestiall diuinitie; following nature the surest guide (as by experience I haue scene) doe couer and nourish in their nests their young ones during the time that they be small, naked, vnfeathered, and not able flie: but when they be great, puissant and able to defend and saue themselves from other birds of pray, and that they be once fledg and feathered sufficiently to beare and eleuate their bodics in the ayre then doe they disnest them; and after they haue taught them to flye about

„ their nest. they leade them euery day further and further, & fi-  
 „ nally at length let them flie without way or trace, througħ  
 „ the emptie seeming field of the ayre at their voluntary plea-  
 „ sure, and freely abandon them with as little thought by assu-  
 „ rance of their greatnesse, as befoze they had care and affection  
 „ of their smalles by reason of their infirmitie: and so send  
 „ them at aduenture, albeit they see the immensall space in the  
 „ ayre of a 1000. wapes, vnmarked, and without signe or to-  
 „ ken as the earth is, and neuer hope either their returne, re-  
 „ uision, or reknowledge. Yea and when as yet they would  
 „ not leaue their nests, but liue idly therein like Cokoes, their  
 „ parents beate them with their wings, gripe them with their  
 „ claws, and nib them with their bills vntill such time as they  
 „ haue chased them by force out of their nests; wherein no bird  
 „ of good sight ought or wil remaine after it be fledde, & suffici-  
 „ ciently fethered to rise in the ayre: this I haue spoken Da-  
 „ dam; and to aduance my selfe further to speake in your ho-  
 „ norable presence, youthfull shame, motherly reuerence, and  
 „ childish feare doe defend me: but I knowe your wisdom to  
 „ be so great, that you vnderstand well enough whereto my  
 „ speeches doe tend. Then the Quene Priscaraxe, who by an  
 „ occult and ingenious prudence giuen her by Phoebus her  
 „ Sonne, knewe what he would haue saide, by the only opening  
 „ of his mouth: and who was not ignorant, that by this gentle  
 „ figure of the bird, her dere Sonne Alecto demanded of her  
 „ priuie leaue to go search strange aduentures, and Franc-Gal  
 „ his Father: could not abstaine from shedding forth grosse  
 „ teares in harkening to, and beholding her Sonne speaking  
 „ on his knees befoze her, vnder such humble and figuratiue  
 „ speech of the bird, not daring openly to discouer the request of  
 „ his desire, which sufficiently hee declared vnder the image of  
 „ the birds: which brought the Quene in memory of a dreame  
 „ which she had the night befoze, wherein it seemed to her, that  
 „ her little sparrow which in delices she had nourished so tame  
 „ that it would flie round about the house reasonable farre off,  
 „ but so soone as shee called it, it would at her call returne and  
 „ come to her fist: and in her sleepe she had seene it suddainely

to become a right faire and great bird of hzaue and diuers  
plumage, with a face of hoxne, a bearde of flesh, neck and legs  
like to a Griphon, breasted like a Lyon, and sighted like to an  
Eagle, which departed from her further and further, and  
would not returne, for all the calling shee could make: but  
flew so farre and so high that shee lost altogether the sight  
thereof. Howeuer there appeared to her in vision, that shee  
lost thre other in a cage to goe seeke this: and through great  
desire to followe it, two great and large wings were giuen  
her, wherewithall being carried into diuers places to seeke  
her sparrowe, she could not finde it: but in the end she rested  
and reposed herselfe vpon the high tower of a strong castle,  
where her wings fel of, and her serpents tayle turned into hu-  
maine legs and feete: and thereupon waking the vision vani-  
shed away: whereof wel vnderstanding the signification and  
foze thinking of that which would follow, neuertheles know-  
ing that the assigne of the celestiaall ordinances must be fulfil-  
led, together fearing lest the vnbridled wantonnes of Alec-  
tors youth, and the ouer familiar conuersation of the great  
Sonne with the yong mother without husband, might breed  
either criminall incest or defamed suspition, she resolved her  
selfe (as before she had determined) not to hinder his depar-  
ture, but rather honestly to license him to goe, vnder good oc-  
casion of sending him towards his father. Wherefore ta-  
king him by the hand & making him arise, she said thus vn-  
to him: Alector my sayre Sonne, my dære Sonne Alector: “  
if I shed teares be thou not abashed: for hauing passed short “  
time with ioy in the company of my Lord Franc-Gal thy fa- “  
ther, I somewhat consoled my selfe to haue such a pawne “  
of him and his promised returne, as is thy person engendred “  
of his bloud. But now seeing thou art enclined to abandon “  
mee and followe him, and that by celestiaall destiny it must “  
needs be so, feeling my selfe at this instant as it wer bereaued “  
both of husband and Sonne the two dærest persons to mee “  
in this world, no meruaile it is though I bee sad, for the an- “  
guishes of perpetuall want do already enuiron my soule; my “  
heart telleth me, and my dreames presage me that I shall ne- “

„ net see either of you both againe. Notwithstanding sith I  
 „ am not ignorant that childishnes and puerilitie being ouer  
 „ past, and youth entring it is neither honest nor expedient for  
 „ a young man which is extract and come of a noble race to re-  
 „ maine vnglorious specially vnder his mothers wing, but ra-  
 „ ther followe the vertuous steps of the father, if so he bee (as  
 „ is Franc-Gal thy Lord and Svyre) and with hardines of the  
 „ execution of his enterprises to search the immortall honoz by  
 „ happie pursuits of great fortunes and strange adventures,  
 „ whereto the supernall powers doe call and conduct him:  
 „ whereto then being eternally ordained, as I cannot so will  
 „ I not resist it. Wherefore my faire Sonne Alestor, my  
 „ dère Sonne Alestor from henceforth I giue thee licence  
 „ (albeit to my great sorowe and heart grieve) and libertie to  
 „ depart to morrow morning without letting me know or vnder-  
 „ stand thereof, for mine eyes and heart will not serue to  
 „ seele and see it. On this condition that (hauing found by  
 „ seeking through the world, thy Father Franc-Gal whose re-  
 „ nowme will ensigne thee where to find him) thou take the or-  
 „ der of Knighthood of him, for of a more wise, valiant and  
 „ vertuous man thou canst not receiue it. And the soonest that  
 „ is possible for thee, to leade and bring him towards me and  
 „ thy selfe with him, for so shalt thou promise me: In this spea-  
 „ king she put forth her hand, and Alestor kissing it (with his  
 „ owne first) couered it with great reuerence, promising and  
 „ swearing by his faith, to doe the Queenes commandement  
 „ to the vtermost of his power. This done, said, promised, and  
 „ permitted Priscaraxe gaue to her dère Sonne two sayre  
 „ shirts as white as snowe, as sweete as balme, a sayre vermil-  
 „ lion hat of purple leather checkered, a sayre coate to ride in  
 „ (made with the needle) of diuers colozed silks, wrought with  
 „ embrothered fethers naturally painted like the Orientall  
 „ birds, with great large and hanging sleeves, and a sayre Jac-  
 „ ket abone that, wrought and fringed with golden thred wa-  
 „ ned, all which was made and wouen with her owne proper  
 „ handos; and taking from her neck a most pprecious and rich  
 „ chaine of gold, put it about the neck of her Sonne Alestor to  
 „ show

showe that he was come of noble bloud, and so most tenderly and pitiously kissing him she had him, adew; for she had no more power to speak to him, but retired into her secret chamber that shee might weepe her fill, and by force of teares let out the anguishes and sorowes which oppressed her heart. Alector on the other side moved and naturally compassioned with the dolour of his Mother, yet neuertheles right glad for having obtained leaue, returned to his chamber which was within the Quenes Pallace, and preparing al his trinkets, caused the sayest and strongest horse that hee could chuse to be made readie, trussed up a little male, & after he had rested and slept certaine houres in the night he arose befoze day, and apparrelled him in al that which the Quene had giuen him, and so mounted on horseback, and departed all alone, without speaking or bidding farwell to any person, taking his way by land (for the Sea was as yet to him unknowne) vpon his left hand towards the East, leauing Europa on his right hand, chosling Asia and entred into Suria, passed the riuer of Euphrates to goe into Persia and the Indes, where hee encountered with such adventures as hee afterwards told mee, and as thou shalt hereafter vnderstand.

*The proesse of the peregrination of Franc-Gal through the World, with the disconerie of the Seas, Isles and land.*

CAP. XVIII.



While these things were thus a doing in the interior Scythia, after I had sent back the messenger which founde me in Calis, I mounted on my good horse Durat Hippopotame, vpon whome (leuing Hispania and Mauritania which I had sufficiently visited) I entered and passed boldly the straight of Iuberalcar of Hispania & came into the great

great Ocean Sea which doth containe in his compasse the whole earth. Then taking my way on the right hand towards the North, riding ouer the great fishes & Britanickall whales, I coasted the rivages of the exterior Spayne, of Portugall, of the Ocean Gauls, of the great Isle of Albion, called great Brittain of England, Scotland, Iuuerne, Ireland, the Islands of Orcades, and the vtermost Thule. From thence returning on the right hand towards the West, I went to see the lands of Corterar, of Terra Florida, the countrey of Chamaho Temistitan, Beraigne and Peru, abounding in gold and precious stones; Cuba, the lands of the black Swoopes where the birds bee greene, the trees red: the Isles of the Spants, and the countrey of the cruell Canibals deuourers of men, without forgetting the Isles lying in that Occidentall Sea, as the fortunate Isles; the Isles of Canary and Madera: Zipangre and the 7448. Isles of the Occidentall Archipelagus. Then taking my returne by the Meridionall, and passing vnder the Tropic of Cancer through the Hesperian goulfe, I coasted all the interior Libya, and entred into the farre of Magatian, and into the peaceable Seas without torment, and so went to view the happie land of Calensuan. From thence I returned by the coast of Africk towards the South, and passing vnder the Equinoctiall, I came to coast the high & low Aethiopia, the Nigrites, the Realm of Gambre and Senegue vnto *Capa de bona esperanza*, and so to the Troglodites habiting vnder the earth. From thence coasting Arabia and the lands nigh the red sea I passed alongst the Realmes of Goa, Canouer, and Calcut, and so visited the great noble & rich Isle of Taprobane, Perne, the Isles of Malucques, and the two Iaues: and hauing compassed the black Realmes of Quiola, Melinde, Scilam, and Habest, I visited Zaphal the Isle of the golden mynes, and came to the Realm of Quinsag, and so entred into the Barbarian Sea, and from thence into the Indian seas. I passed the Realm of Cathay, and entred into the high India, and tooke land at Tangut to repose my selfe a while, hoping anone after to trauele the region of Bator and to come  
into

into Tartary, and so hauing made the whole Tourne of the lands, seas, and Isles, to render my selfe againe to my most welbeloued Priscaraxe. And knowe (O Archier) that ouer and about all these mortuall iournies, in euerie countrie and Region where I landed, I trauesed the same lands most commonly on other earthly horses, to knowe the diuersitie of the townes, countries, and manners of men: reforming them if they were barbarous, And bringing them to ciuilitie if they were sauage and cruell, ensigning them Religion of honor to their Soueraigne, Vertue, Faith, Justice, Temperance and Marriage. Likewise teaching them to knowe the good fruites, plants, trees, rootes, hearbs, graines, and metallails which they had in their regions and knew not: ensigning them also husbandry, and to till their grounds, vineyards, and gardenes, with the workmanship & making of garments and houses: and by force of armes chastening the wicked and obstinate, doing violence and outrage to other men: likewise purging the country of monsters, of euil & dangerous beasts: and doing infinite other acts of vertues which should be ouerlong to reckon, and loathsome to thee to heare; and to my selfe lesse honorable to declare my praises by mine own mouth. But thus it fell out, that by these my merites and good doedes, I got the fauor, loue, and good will of all the Princes & people of the world: receiuing of them innumerable riches, presents, & precious gifts, of all the best and excellentest things which were in their countries and Region, but about all I got to my selfe an eternall good renomme: whereby being knowne, reclaimed, & beloued through the world, my Sonne Alecto serching me, could not faile to vnderstand netues of me euery where: enquiring alwaies for the great old Knight vpon the swimming and flying horse: who finally came and found mee at Tangut, hauing trauesed other terrestriall, waies, than I had passed, before I came into the Scythian Region where I engendred him vpon Priscaraxe, as I haue recited to thee before.

*The Voyage of Alektor seeking his Father, the newes which hee had of him after hee had been rauished at the Ruur of Tygre, where hee slew the rauening Woolues. Of the taking of the shield at the Trophie, of his fall, and of the inuisible laugher.*

## CAP. XIX.



While I was in my farre travels, Alektor was on the other side tra-  
uersing the regions of Asia Minor, the great Mountaine of Tor, the  
flouds of Tygre and Euphrates: but in passing the Tygre being a  
rauishing floud, and impetuous like an arrow (whereof it beareth the  
name) his horse, for all his strength  
and force hee had, was neuerthelesse rauished by the running  
streame of the water, which he could not withstand, and was  
carried into Armenia to the foote of a mountaine, where hee  
tooke land: and after hee had shaken his eares, maine, taile,  
and whole body to cast of the water, he began to neigh aloud.  
At this neighing two rauening Wolues descended from the  
mountaines seeking their pray vpon the neighing beast, and  
with wide and open throate, threatned nothing but to de-  
uoure him, howling most horribly. The horse naturallie  
knowing his enemies, began to snort and ring furiously, in  
such sort that he strooke one of the wolues which would haue  
fastned on him behinde & haue lopen vpon his croup, whiles  
the other assailed him befoze. But the gentle horse, seeing  
the one, and feeling the other, gaue such a sling with his two  
heelles against his brest, so rudelic, that he sent him like foote  
back to the earth, amased, with his sides brcsed. And with  
that rude sling it behoued Alektor to fall to the ground: who  
fearing more his horse than his owne person, arose speedilie  
with his good sword naked in his hand, and presented himself  
befoze

before the great rauening wolfe, who perceiuing him, left the houle, and flew vpon Alecto, throwing one of his pawes vpon his head, thinking to haue stroke him downe, and after to haue strangled him with faire teeth: but hee found the greene hat of lether hard and strong, which defended him from hurting his head, and yet for all that hee plucked it of and left him bare head. Alecto in the meane while slept not, but with his good sworde gaue such a stroke vpon the eare of the beast, that he stroke it off with part of the head, and the stroke falling vpon his shoulder, cut off his foote & right leg. Therewithall the beast being enraged, began hideously to howle, and so as Alecto (thinking that hee had slaine the beast) stooped downe to take vp his hat to couer his head, the rauening Wolfe through mortall rage caught him by the arme which he had naked, with his sharp teeth, so straightly, that with the paine hee felt, almost his heart had failed him: but his noble hardines caused him to take courage, whereby he gaue such a thrust with his sworde into the body and heart of the beast, that with the issuing of the bloud his life departed, and force failed: his teeth notwithstanding remaining in Alectos arme, through mortall conuulsion so fastned, that hee could not recouer it from the dead beast, hauing but one hand wherewith to help himselfe. His houle on the other part had so trampled the other Wolfe with his forefeete, so beaten him with his hinder heeles, and so pressed his neck with sayre teeth, that he had made an ende of killing him, the Wolfe lying dead stretched out vpon the earth, and the houle afterwards snorting and neighing. At the noyse whereof issued a fisherman out of his house which was thereby, because he got his liuing with catching of fish vpon the riuer, with nets, hookes, and a little boate. This good fisherman seeing these two rauening Wolves dead, was merueilously astonished at the valure which he sawe to be in so young a person, and soze compassioned of the euill which hee saw him suffer. Therefore he approached nere him with salutation and gentle speech, and by force of his hands, and strokes of a beetle vpon the iawes of the Wolfe, and with a knife which he had

about him, he opened the catch of the Wolfe, and belted on  
the arme of Alestor, who seeing his victorie at the first com-  
bat with his sword which he had neuer made, through great  
joy he began to sing aloud & cleere in the Scythic language,  
*Cokolastis*, which is to say, Victorious. And thereupon the  
fisherman led him to his cottage and washed his wounds in  
warine wine and milke with sage: applying thereto leaues  
of the heath Peoesne, with the skin cut from the Wolfes  
foote, which hee flead off whiles it was hot, wherewith hee  
couered his arme so int, as though it had been a sleue  
made expressly for it. In the meane while an olde wife  
which hee had, put some fish into the pot to boyle, and o-  
ther some vpon the gridiron to roast: then spread shee on  
the ground a large hearts skin cut round, and set there-  
on Barlie Bread reasonable white, baked vpon a ryle,  
with dried Rapins and Apples, with Wine made of Honey  
and water, enuiting simplie their Guest to eat and drinke,  
whereto hee accorded most willingly as one that had neede  
thereof. Whereupon they sat downe with their leggs a  
crosse about this sayre table cloth without seame, where the  
olde wife serued them with boyled and roasted fish, and with  
Roze of fruite. So they eat and dranke at their ease, deu-  
sing of the aduencure, and how the impetuous flood had  
carried him, vnknotwing in what country hee was. The  
fisherman tolde him that he was at the foote of the moun-  
taines of Armenia. Then Alestor demanded of him,  
if hee knewe no newes of mee, giuing him tokens of my  
swimming and flying horse. The fisherman tolde him,  
that aboute two yeares passed hee had scene mounting a-  
gainst the riuier such a great and huge horse, carrying di-  
uers persons and other things, but amongst the rest, a  
strong, great, and sayre personage armed with the skins of  
Lyons vpon a white harnessse, carrying a great shield with  
a Sunne of gold in a field of Azure: and afterwards that he  
had vnderstood, how this great man had discomfitted and  
ouerthrowne a great companie of theeues which robbed  
and spoyled the whole Region: for which cause the countrey  
had

had done him great honor. As touching the fact, hee spake  
 troth, for in my voyage by Sea, coasting the rivages: all the  
 mouthes of the Rivers which I founde, I was accustomed  
 to enter them, to see and knowe the Townes and Countries  
 lying there about in the continent: whereby it happened that  
 passing the Persian gulph alongest Arabia, and view-  
 ing the mouthes of this sayre River Tygre falling into the  
 Sea, I entered into the same, and so mounted against the  
 Streames. And by fortune apperceiuing a Carauanne of Ara-  
 bian thieues and robbers, who vnder the conduct of a puis-  
 sant and valiant (but a wicked) Knight, enfeisted the whole  
 Countrey. In so much that hauing vnderstood the popu-  
 lar complaints, I landed with my men ( whereto those  
 thieues had likewise fainedly enuited vs, to rob and spoyle  
 vs) and so set vpon this Canaille & euill harnessed company  
 with such hardines and exproyt, that of a great number of  
 them, there remayned but few, who saved themselves by  
 flight, and wee pursued them to Mount Caucasus, where  
 wee overthrew them all, togeather with the great Knight,  
 who bearing a shield with a Cock of gold, defended himselfe  
 so long as hee could, and yet neuertheless would neuer ren-  
 der himselfe. Wherefoze with a great stroak of my sword, I  
 cloue his head in twaine, and then hong I vp their armes &  
 the shield aboue them all, vpon an old tree which was in that  
 place in the forme of a Trophie: & caused the valiant Knight  
 to be buried at the foote thereof, who through obstination to my  
 great grief had caused himself to be slaine. And so for that time  
 we purged the countrey. This done, one night I returned in-  
 to the Persian sea by the other mouth of Tygre (for it empti-  
 ed it self into the sea by two mouthes, the one notwithstanding,  
 ing, not far distant from the other) & took my way towards  
 Madagascar Zarizibar, and the Isles of the Grifons. Alector  
 hearing this news of me, was wonderful glad, wherefoze ri-  
 sing fro the table he thanked his host & hostis for their gentle-  
 nes. And for that he had found the sleeues which was made  
 of the skin of the Wolfes leg to be very sayre, and wel besee-  
 ming him (for hee had his armes naked, for so much as the

sleeves of his coate did not couer him, but were open and hanging by like a coate of armes) he required the fisherman to flea the other leg for his right arme, and to flea and giue him both the skins of the Wolfe, which the good man most willingly performed: and Alector more willingly accepted them and thereof made sayre bardes for his horse, saying that he had well merited to haue part of the spoyle, for that he had been participate of the danger, and done his dutie in the fight. Wherein this yong pouth well declared that he was come of a franke and noble nature and birth: hauing thus harnessed and barded his horse with these sayre skins of the rauening Wolfe, hee mounted vpon him and toke leaue of his hoste; hauing vnderstood that I had gained the heighth he determined to follow me, and to mount vp against the impetuous riuer of Tygre, not by the rauishing way which had so carried him away, but by the surest way of the land. And rode so long by many iournies, that one day at Sonne going downe he found himselfe at the fote of one side of the mount Caucasus in a plaine deuided into thre high waies: where was a place of reasonable space & ample enough, and in the mids a Trophie erected vpon the body and branches of a great olde and dead tree, charged with all sorts of harneys, Launces, swords, and shields. In contemplation whereof, Alector who had a singular pleasure in armes, alighted, letting his horse feede on the sayre grasse which was about the tree, and with great contemplation began to behold these sorts of armes hanging vpon the Trophie of the tree. But above all the rest, his eyes following his affection, were most fixed vpon one sayre and great shield made in forme of an egge and couered with a plate of brasle whereon was eleuated a Cock of gold, armed and spurred with Gules in a damasked field of greene synople, the Cock being raised on his tiptoes, beating his wings, and looking vp a loft. This shield so pleased this yong Alector (as youth is delighted with such pleasant pictures) that he concluded to take it off and carrie it away for the couerture and ornamment of his body, as also he would haue done the other armes, but that hee

sawe

sawe them ouer great for the copulencie of his age: as also  
 for that he had been aduertised, that to put on harnesse before  
 he was knighted, appertained not vnto him. Wherefore  
 considering that he was but an Esquire to whome it is law-  
 full to carrie a shield, as armes of defence and not of offence,  
 and ignorant that the Trophies are inuolable like to Sepul-  
 chres, through simple affection and desire, mounted upright  
 on his horse, and reaching as high as he could with the point  
 of his sword toke downe the shield which hong on the high-  
 est of the shield, his horse apperceiuing a fayre fountaine run-  
 ning at the fute of the mountaine amongst a sort of trees, and  
 being a thirst of his daily trauell, stole away from vnder his  
 master to goe drinke, wherewithall Alectoꝛ fell downe with  
 his naked sword in his hand and the shield after him. And at  
 the same instant he might heare a great laughter of one who  
 mocked him with open throte. Whereby thinking that  
 there had been some body hid there about, who with laugh-  
 ing had mocked him at his fall, he sodainly arose, put the shield  
 about his neck and the sword in his hand (as he was of na-  
 ture choleric enough and proude, and as glorious of sodaine  
 rising as shamefull of his fall) with a fierce and long voyce,  
 sayde: what art thou that laughest, and mockest me in secret,  
 as though it were at a lubber, for being faine not of feeble-  
 nes or ill attempt, but by the stealing away of my horse who  
 hild me vp. Laugh not, nor mock not, but onely come and  
 shewe thy selfe in place, and thou shalt be very highly moun-  
 ted if I lay thee not a long more rudely than I my selfe am  
 faine. At these words the other began to laugh more louder  
 than before: wherewithall Alectoꝛ being more moued, how  
 commeth it to passe (quoth hee) that there is such mockers,  
 in this countrie? Ah villainous mockers, coward and ouer  
 hardy, thou laughest, and darest not shewe thy selfe, but I  
 will finde thee well enough, and guard thee well from laugh-  
 ing. And so (ful of impatient indignation) he went searching  
 frō one part to another this faire laughter, who so much more  
 continued: and when Alectoꝛ was in one place, hee might  
 heare him laugh in another right against him: and when hee  
 went

went the other, it seemed that he laughed on the other side, so as this inuisible laughter, caused him with hot fury to run here and there from one side to another, dispising, threatening, prouoking, and beating the bushes and brakes with great strokes of his sword laid on in vaine through dispitfull wrath, vntill such time as the night overtooke him being very black and obscure. Wherefore Alecto being wearied and travelled with running and turning, with casting and singeing of his strokes in vaine, as also with hunger and thirst which he had suffered a great while, apperceiuing the obscure night to approach, and fearing to lose his horse, bethought him to leaue his laughter, doing him no other harme, neuertheless threatening and assuring him that the next day hee would finde him and make him change his laughing into weeping; whereat this ridiculous spirit (as he was) began yet more louder to laugh and in good earnest: for Alecto was well guarded that night from finding his laughter the next day. Seeing therefore that he profited nothing in tormenting himselfe to seeke after him, he took a Hare which he had stroken and slaine in a bush, thinking that it was his mocker, and by the clerenes of the scabbard of his sword made of the Adders skin (as I haue declared before) he followed the trace of his horse towards the mountaines, while he came to the tuft of trees where he found his horse laide in the grasse vp to the belly, eating and reposing himselfe by a fayre and clere fountaine, issuing from the foote of the mountaine. Then his choler being passed, he said, that his horse after his kinde was wiser than himselfe, who after his labor tooke rest and food, whereas he traualled in vaine and hunger. Wherefore his sword put vp into his scabbard, and the shield (which so much pleased him) put about his neck, and the thongs very straight knit and locked for feare of loosing it: he took his Hare, head, & pached her, & then washed his hands in the spring, and dranke (for with chasing himselfe with choler and trauell, hee was very thirsty) and so hauing pulled his Hare in peeces, ate the flesh rawe (which was no nouels to him) so much as he pleased, and til he was satisfied; then went hee againe

again to drinke, to wash his mouth hands and face with the cleere water of the fountaine, and being thus refreshed hee laid him down vpon his shield by his horse, where being wearie with daylie trauaile, he fell into a profound sleepe.

*The apparition by night of the great black Knight challenging his shield of Alektor, what the Knight was, and of the talke passed betweene them: and how this black Knight carried Alektor away in the ayre towards his Father at Tangut, and let him fall laughing.*

CAP. XX.



**L**OWARDS midnight as Alektor was in his most profound sleepe, him thought hee heard a fearefull voyce, which in frightful wise said vnto him: Alektor thou theefe, theefe Alektor and sacrileger, restore me my shield which thou hast taken and strooken downe from the violated Trophie against all right, and after for recompence hast sought to beate me with the strokes of the sword: restore it me I bid thee. At these words Alektor wakened with fright, and arose in haste: and so hee might apperceiue before him, a great black and fierce Knight with a pale visage like one who had beene dead long time before: yet neuertheles one foote and armed in all parts with some of those armes which hee had seene the day before vpon the Trophie, saue only that he wanted a shield. Which great black Knight, said to him againe thus: Alektor, theefe, sacrileger, and periured, thou hast robbed mee of my shield, polluted & violated the sacred Trophie: and thou bring none other than an Esquire against the vow of nobilitie hast taken armes against me, who am or haue been a Knight, seeking with all thy power to kill mee: yea thou hast slaine and  
S
(which

(which is worse) eaten one of my companions of household; and now dost thou think to escape thus with thy rape and sacrilegious theft? Restore mee my shield. Alecton understanding himselfe thus iniured not in his beard (for beard as yet had he none saving that of flesh and blood) but in his face and visage, was merueilously chafed in his skin: yet neuertheles waighing the reasons of the black Knight (which seemed to him not vnreasonable) like a youth well taught (as he was) answered him thus: I haue not stolne the shield, but haue taken it openly as a thing publickly abandoned of all men, & in the open sight of all men which would haue beholden me, yea of the laughter who mocked at my fall, and after hid himself. I knowe not whether it were thine owne or not: for if I knew? But well, I am no sacrileger, at the least wittingly, for I neuer knew til now, what a Trophie was: neither whether it were sacred or prophane, truth it is I haue taken the shield, because it seemed to mee fayre, and necessary for mee and my body, & hanging there vnpolitably vpon an old tre, the which notwithstanding I am ready to render to him, to whome it shalbe shown me iustly to appertaine; otherwise not, for it setteth me well. And to say that I haue falsified the oath of a noble Esquire, and committed felony towards the order of Knighthood; I haue not done it, neither would do it. Truth it is, I sought with my sword a foolish laughter, and scoffer, who (as it seemed to me) mocked at the fault which my horse made me: which laughter I wel heard, but I could neuer see nor finde him: sauing þ in a bush (where me thought I heard him laugh) with a stroke of my sword cast at aduenture I killed a fat Hare, wh'ch there was set. I knew not whether that Hares laugh in this countrey or no, but this I am sure of, that I was laughed and mocked at, & that I haue eaten her with a good appetite. As for thy companions which thou saist I haue slaine and eaten: I knowe not who they be, for I neuer saw them, vnlesse they bee Hares, and that thou thy selfe art some Diuell of a Hare, for thou seemest to me not much more hardy: and the common saying is, that Diuels do wittingly transfoym themselves by the fields into hares. Wherefore shew me

me thine cares, and tel me what thou art: whether thou be a Hare or a knight, which are verie contrarie. For a knight rideth on hozback and is armed, hardy and valiant, or at least wise ought to be: and the Hare goeth on fote, is very fearefull, & by nature unarmed of al defence, both of hoznes, teeth, claws, popson, hardnes, and all, sauing of a certaine feareful legerity: which is the cause that hee is the most fearefullest beast amongst all other creatures, and a pray to the Eagles of the aire, and dogs of the earth, and Chamarrins of the water: yet should he not find it, especially in the dog daies & eleuatiō of the Eagle; wherefore tel me if thou be a knight, or a Hare, or a diuel, or the laugher and mocker of whom I would willingly reuenge my self if I could mēte in him. I am no Hare (or the great black knight) but the hare which thou hast slaine and eaten was my companion; for he kept company with me in my sepulcher: I am not fearefull (for no man can do mee moze harme) neither was I ever, but haue been in my time a worthe knight, hardy, & enterprising great things, of nature franck & liberal, extract out of the noble linage of the Macrobian, & called Gallehault, as witnesseth my shield which thou bearest, wherein is a Cock regarding high towards heauen, whereby I would signifie my high enterprises and hardines: and of such vertue is the shield that whosoever carrieth it, shal neuer haue feare or doubt: & it is that which maketh thee now so assured against me. Now it happened mee thus, that for my great frankenesse and excessive liberalitie (which is called prodigalitie) I became very poore, and yet neuertheles I would alwaies maintaine my greatnes and magnificence, for the atchining wherof, I was constrained for want of mine owne to take of other mens. Wherefore hauing assembled to me a great company & carrauanne of Arabinas, wicked people, & apt to do euil, I destroyed al this countrie in robberies, assaults, rauishments, spoylings & thefts, keeping in my men al the waies, corners, and passalles, in the ports of riuers and seas, taking away the armes, hozses, rings, iuels, stuf, apparel, gold, siluer, & merchandize of such as we took, selling their bodies for slaues, or abusing the luxuriously if they pleased vs.

Nevertheless this life (whereto proud poudertie had brought  
 me) pleased me not, but I had it in abomination: and for that  
 cause I determined, that after I should be gotten by againe  
 insubstance, to haue killed all my companion theues to the  
 end they should do no more euill, and to retire my selfe, and  
 returne to my former honorable, liberall, and lesse prodigall  
 life. But of this paine, one of my great vncles of the Macro-  
 bians called Franc-Gal which is thy Father, deliuered mee:  
 whom I knowe thou goest to seeke, and whom I will cause  
 thee to see to morrow, in recompence of the pleasure which he  
 did in deliuering mee from the wicked life which I led. For  
 being mounted vpon an Hypopotame, which is a great  
 flying and swimming horse in the Riuer of Tygre with some  
 companie of valiant men; for so much as wee were many mo  
 in number, wherein wee trusted, wee inuited them by sayned  
 courtesie to take land and come and rest with vs, which they  
 did, being aduertised before what people we were, and for  
 that cause they searched vs. Whereupon incontinently as  
 they were descended well armed and weaponed, they flog  
 vpon vs with such fury and valour, that notwithstanding  
 the great resistance which I made, all my Arabians were  
 slaine and discomfited by the great prowesse of Franc-Gal,  
 being halfe a Giant, who stroke not a blowe without laying  
 two or thre on the ground. So were the takers taken, and  
 the spoylers spoyled, except foure who through their legerie-  
 tie fled, and I after them. But that saved vs not: for Franc-  
 Gal who by soueraigne force and naturall agilitie ran faster  
 than any horse or hart followed vs not running but flying  
 (as it seemed) vnto the place, where not able in hast to gaine  
 the mountaine, and seeing him alone, wee returned fure a-  
 gainst him, and I my selfe more than any other resisted him:  
 as for my companions, hee had sone cut them in peeces; but  
 I bield him tack reasonable long and hardy enough in the ver-  
 tue and couerture of my shield defending my selfe with great  
 courage: whereupon he seeing my hardines and noble heart,  
 he sommoned me often times to render: but I being enuious  
 of my wicked life answered him, that as then I had neuer  
 bowed,

Downe, and that it was better for me to dye, than either to re-  
quire mercie or revenge in. Wherefore he perceiuing my ob-  
stinacion, ah (quoth he) there is none lost but such as are ob-  
stinate, and in saying so, hee gaue me such a stroake with his  
sword, that he cloue my head in twaine. At these words the  
great black Knight plucked off his helmet and showed to A-  
lecto his clouen head, in such sort that one might perceiue  
the braines consumed with wormes, then putting on his hel-  
met againe, hee continued his tale, saying: with this great  
stroake I fell downe dead: and Franc-Gal vnarmed me and  
my fellowes also, whose carcases he left as food for the beasts  
of the earth and fowles of the ayre: but my body hee caused  
to be buried at the fote of the great withered tree in the me-  
dowes her about, and laid a stone vpon a graue. Then hung  
hee vp our armes in the Trophie of the great tree and my  
shield about all, which thou hast taken off, therefore restore it  
mee. Alecto then answered him; Gallehault; say that my  
Lord and Father (as thou thy selfe hast confessed) hath con-  
quered by force of armes the shield of thee, thou hast no more  
title in it, but by right of heire, it appertaineth to me who am  
his sonne, and for that cause willingly I will not for goe it,  
vlesse it be by greater force than mine, but will keepe it so  
long as I can for thy sake who art my kinsman, and hast not  
any more neede thereof: as also for the honor of my Father  
who hath valiantly conquered it, and for the beautie and ver-  
tue which I see and feele to be in it: and therefore goe rest thy  
selfe in thy sepulcher, and let me sleepe in peace. The Galle-  
hault in a terrible and feareful voyce saide vnto him horribly;  
Restore me my shield. And in so saying þ great black knight  
(which was a spright in the forme of Gallehault)ooke the  
shield with both his hands, which Alecto had surely fastned  
and buckled about his shoulders, and which the more he hild  
and embraced. Wherefore this vmbragious black Knight  
lifted vp the shield in the ayre by a certaine force and spiritu-  
all puissance, and carried vp Alecto also who was fastned  
to the shield, and at an instant caused him to lose ground, and  
raised him vp so high in the ayre, that his horse, (which hee

might perceiue by the light of the clere mune, and whom he bewailed to lose, seemed to him but a little Hare lying vpon the grasse, by reason of the farre distance and height that the phantastical Knight had eleuated him, carrying him through the lesser region of the ayre by the field, whereat this Esquire was fastned & hanging (for it was not lawful for the knight to touch his person) causing him to trauesse the ayre and winds, striving the one against the other so rudely, that with great paine could hee fetch his winde, for that the sodaine moving tooke away the facultie of taking breath: in so much that in three or foure howres hee had carried him more then twelue hundred miles from the place where hee had found him: and a little before day he abased himselfe the height of a launce from the ground ouer a sayre green and soft meadow, where the black Knight shoke the shield to shake off Alecto, but hee had so well buckled it, and held it so fast embraced, as though it had beene boine and vnitied with his bodie and armes. And yet neuerthelesse for all the shaking, Alecto was not a whit astonished, but remained assured as though hee had beene on firme ground, through vertue of the shield which he would not leane, saying thus:

*Or ere I shall it leane, I will be slaine:  
Els with, or on thy back returne againe.*

Hee had not so soone spoken the word, but hee felt the shield loosed by the black Knight, and hee fell downe vpon the grasse all astonished, aswell for the change of the ayre, as for the fall which was reasonable high. Therewithall this Spirit of the black Knight who had brought him thither for his good, and who tooke pleasure to chase the hot bloud of his hardie youth, began to laugh far greater and louder then euer he did, in the same voyce which hee had heard him laugh the day before. Therewithall Alecto hearing irritated, arose on his feete in great anger, saying: *Way up Lord*

Lord Diuell the laugher: it is then thou gentle Gallhea,  
that mockest and laughest at mee when by misadventure  
I fell to the earth like a lubber: but if I could catch thee:  
As this euill done to laugh without doing other harme  
(quoth the spright) thou threatnest mee vaine and with  
inturie, for hauing done thee a good turne, for if I would,  
it is not yet one houre passed, but that I might haue let  
thee saue from aboue the clouds vppon the hard rocks:  
where contrariwise, I haue let thee fall downe easily vppon  
the grasse and soft ground, for not hurting thee. And if I  
haue a little plaide the Frog with thee, to laugh at the  
fire of thy pleasant youth, it hath not bene for thine euill,  
but for thy good. For I am thy Kinsman, and I lone thee,  
and take delight to helpe thee, as hereafter thou shalt under-  
stand, at such time as thou shalt haue neede of mee. And  
knowe that it was I which chased thy horse to the foun-  
taine, to make him steale from vnder thee, and to make  
thee fall with the shilde. For which the poore innocent  
beast is now well punished, for the sauage beasts of mount  
Caucas are descended in great number at the sent of his  
fresh flesh, and haue deuoured and eaten him: as likewise  
they would haue done thee, (being not able to saue thy  
selfe with all thy force and hardines) if I had not transpor-  
ted thee from that place, where I haue dwelt two yeares  
and more, conuersing about the tree and Trophie, alwaies  
in watch to hearken and attend thy comming, and to saue  
thee my shilde, which belonged to none but thee. And  
all those that haue assayed to take it before thy comming,  
I haue cast them downe headlong, and ruinated them af-  
ter diuers waies, and after another order then thou art saluer:  
in somuch that they returned no more to take it downe. For  
I kept it for thee, and I giue it thee, carrie it with thee, and  
keepe it well, so it shall stand thee in great stead many times.  
Now is my watch and guard atchieued, I wil returne to my  
repose, where I shal alwaies be readie to syde thee in thy ex-  
treame necessities. Salute in my behalfe thy father Fran-  
Gal whom through my meanes thou shalt see this day; for  
if

if I had not this night brought thee more then 1200. miles, thou hadst neuer seen him; recon vnto him the things which thou hast seene: and shewe him this shield. Tell him that Gallehault Macrobe whom he knoweth, sendeth him word, that very shortly hee will visit him, to reuenge the mortall wound which he receiued of him: to God I commend thee. And thus as Alecto would haue thanked him, and demanded an interpretation of his sayings, he sawe him suddainely changed into a long and cleere flame of fire like a tailed comet, flying through the ayre more swifter than the shot of a Crosse bowe, mounting still towards the higher Region through the which hee had bene brought, and followed him still with the eye vntill he had lost the sight thereof. Whereupon knowing not what other thing to doo, hee laid him downe with his shield vpon the grasse, and remembering in himself the talke which he had had with Gallehault the great black Knight with the clouen head, hee fell a sleepe in the fresh of the morning, a little befoze the breake of the day, at such time as all liuing creatures take sleepe, by reason of the moystnes of the night falling.

*The sad Augure that happened to Franc-Gal, his encounterie with his Sonne sleeping: the mutuall knowledge and talke held betweene them. The killing of Troluat the Sea monster. Their departure from Tangut, and the losse of Alecto carried away by the wind, and the lamentacion of his Father: and thereupon the arriuall of the two old men at Orbe.*

## CAP. XXI.



His night I had not well slept by reason of an euill Augure which was happened to me the day befoze: for as I was at a windowe in the pallace of Tangut where I was lodged, there came flying towards me a younge Dowe carrying in her bill a branch of bay leaues,

Ieantes which she presented to my hands and rested vpon my  
 fist: and as I did contemplate and behold how iollie she was  
 decked with feathers violet, changeable, and guilded round  
 about her neck like an enameled chaine, I saw comming to-  
 wards me two great birds of pray: the one a Rauen croking,  
 who rested vpon my head, the other a red Vultur who rant-  
 shed away the Dove with his claws very far off, and high,  
 insomuch that I lost the sight thereof, and anon after he came  
 flying by mee againe carrying alwaies the Dove with him,  
 which me thought was become a Roake, carrying in her bill a  
 turning and wreathing serpent. And therevpon came an Ea-  
 gle who toke the Dove letting the serpent fall to the earth  
 starke dead, and the Vultur flying away in the ayre, the Ea-  
 gle carried away the Dove (resembling a Roak) so long that  
 I sawe him no more. But the Rauen who was vpon my  
 head, beate mine eyes with her wings and would not depart,  
 untill forceably I chased her away with the blowes of mine  
 armes and hands: so that at length shee was forced to arise  
 crying and croking in mortall threatening wise. This Augu-  
 ric (which of a truerh was very sinister and of an euil presage  
 to me) did so trouble mee, and represented vnto mee so many  
 cursed significacions, that I could not sleepe in all the night:  
 wherefore being wearie of my vnquietnes, I arose before  
 day, & hauing deliberated to depart very shortly, I went to-  
 wards the Sea to see how my Hippopotame fared: where-  
 vpon it happened that in passing through the meddow (being  
 yet somewhat dark) I perceiued a far off a certaine long light  
 stretched out nere the ground, yelding such a brightnes that  
 one might well see that there was one laid thereby, and still  
 me thought I had sene this light before that time. Where-  
 fore appoaching more nere, and Aurora already hauing cha-  
 sed away the darkenes of the night, I saw a most fayre yong  
 man sleeping ful sweetly: at the first sight of whom, mine en-  
 trailes moued within me, and I might perceiue that he was  
 laid vpon the greene shield of brasse with the Cork of golde,  
 which partely I knewe to bee that which I had before time  
 hanged vpon the Trophie, merruailing much how he should  
 come

come by it. For after I had hong it vpon the tree, and sitting  
it so sayre, I had great desire my selfe to haue carried it a-  
way, and did my endeour to haue plucked it downe againe,  
but it was in vaine: for I might aswell haue plucked vp  
the tree by the roote, but a grey Crowe iugging ouer me,  
cryed:

*Labour no more to gaine the shield,  
For it is ordained for a wise borne Child.*

Which when I vnderstood I left off, esteeming that it should  
neuer happen to any; for as a man dieth but once, so is hee  
borne but once. And thereupon I remember my selfe of  
the double birth of Alecto which the messenger had acknow-  
ledged to mee, and therefore I imagined that the sayre Esquire  
might bee my Sonne Alecto: considering also the sworde  
which hee wore, which incontinently I knew to bee the same  
that I had sent him with the shining scabbers, which was  
that which I saw first glister, beholding likewise his rich  
apparel, and the chaine of gold about his neck, which were  
tokens of noblenesse. Besides this I saw the streaks of his  
face resembling the forme and beautie of the Queene Prisca:  
rare, yea more sayre and more admirable; and remembering  
with my selfe moreover, of the soveraine and great growth,  
that I was informed of his advanced youth. All which  
things conferred together, I assured my selfe for certaine,  
that this young Esquire was my Sonne Alecto, which  
made my heart to throb and mine eyes to shed teares  
through pittie and fatherly loue. And thus as I beheld  
him through amorous affection, hee began to stretch out his  
armes and to open his eyes so cleere as fine cristall, and see-  
ing me before him, sodainely hee arose on his seate, and after  
an honest reuerence hee began his speech with the first word  
of truely saying to me thus: good Father what would you,  
that thus peaceably haue overtaken me sleeping, and thus  
attentiuely beholden mee. Sayre Sonne (quoth I) for that  
me thinks I should knowe thee, and yet haue I neuer scene  
thee before this present houre for the which I render thanks  
to the Soueraigne. And the first word which thou hast ut-  
tered

erred in reverence of mine age (as I thinke) in calling me by the name of Father, is issued out of thy mouth by naturall instinction, for I am thy Father, and thou my Sonne boyle of the Quene Priscaraxe.

Thou art then Franc-Gal (quoth Alestor) the great olde Knight with the swimming and flying boyle: For other Father will I not acknowledge vnder the Heavens: Franc-Gal am I for certaine (quoth I) and to put thee in more assurance come with me, and I will shew thee my swimming and flying boyle. To this hee most willingly agreed, so went we deuising together vnto the sea side, where I showed him my great boyle Durat Hippopotame, which be seeing so great, so puissant and mercurious, that a hundred terrestriall boyles were not comparable vnto him, hee was astonished, desiring greatly to be mounted vpon him, in lamenting his own which the sauage beasts had eaten. Then knowing for certain that I was his Father Franc-Gal, hee prostrated himselfe on his knees in humble reverence before me, acknowledging me and saying: my Lord and my Father, behold here your humble Sonne Alestor which my Lady & Mother the Quene Priscaraxe, hath sent you: How truly hath Gallehaulke the great black knight spoken and kept promise, who told me that this day hee would set mee in such a place where I should see my Lord and Father Franc-Gal: without the aide of which good spirit, it had bene impossible for mee euer to haue found you through so many long and diuers errors. Whereupon I enquired of him, who was that Gallehaulke Knight, and that good spirit who had adressed him to me: and in our returning and going towards Tangur hee accounted to mee all his adventures, and the conquest of the faire shield in such sort as I haue recited it: whereby I vnderstood that it was the great and valiant Knight, the thiefe which I had overthrowne and slaine against my will through his owne obstinate courage, and buried at the foote of the Trophie, and then I knew that the shield was destinated to Alestor, but that the black Knight threatned to see me shortly, yea and to reuenge his death; that gaue mee a sad signification,

with the chull auguries which I had the day before. But the great ioy I had to see my Sonne Alestor so fayre, so well bozne, brought vp, and taught, and of so happie a beginning, made mee forget all ill coniectures, and to set a side all doubts and feares of infortunes which hong before mine eyes, and which as yet are not ended. And so deuising, we returned to the palace where my men attended me, unknowing but that I was yet in bed, because in the morning at my departure, I had firmed my chamber doore, and was issued without the knowledge of any one, for euery man slept soundly. Being thus returned to the Palace, after I had declared to my men who and what Alestor was, all of them receiued him with great ioy, with admiration of his beaurie and god grace, doing to him most great honoz and reuerence, yea moze than to my selfe (as many doe rather worship the Sonne rising, than going down) for the which I was neither sope nor enuions; for his great beaurie, vertue and honestie, did well merit it: hereupon the tables were covered, and wee went to dinner most gorgeously. And amongst other communications which were held at the table, Alestor declared to me the great grief that Priscaraxe had of my long tarrying, and of the earnest desire which shee had of my returne, for the accomplishing whereof she most affectuously required me by him, which he also on his part most earnestly desired, saying that hee had promised and swozne to the Quene his Mother, neuer to returne againe to her, vnles he brought me with him: beseeching me with humble reuerence to doe him the fauor to satisfie his promises. Wherefore, I who was no lesse affectionated towards the Mother and Sonne, than they towards me, deliberated, and made him promise assuredly to depart the next day: and for that cause I commanded my men to trusse vp harness, and baggage, to appoint and make readie my good horse Durat: which they did with great and good diligence. The whiles I and Alestor went to take leaue of the King of Tangut, rendering him thanks for his hospitalitie: who on the contrarie, thanked vs of the good succoz which I and my people had done him with our great Hippopotame against a horrible

horrible monster of the Sea called Trolual, so great as a little Isle in the Sea, or a great mountaine on the earth: who, at euerie full moon would cast himself into the hauens, ports and creekes, deuouring and destroying all that he met, and swallowing vp men women and children aliuie, yea horses, hine, and other beasts. This monster Trolual seeing our great Hippopotame going vpon the Sea, and we mounted vpon him, thrusting and breaking the waues before him, lanced himself with terrible impetuositie against vs and our great horse, where he thought to haue had abundant pray: but he found mauchat maurat, or maurat mauchat: for our Hippopotame (who is the most hurtfull creature and greatestower of harme in all the world, when he is pulled there to with violence) as the Trolual opened his mouth so large as the arch of a gate to haue swallowed him vp and vs therewith: hee caught him with his two great teeth before by the hip, in rayling him out of the water so high as we were, whereby presently I thrust my lance into his throte, with the point sticking & fastning in his rose, and the great end planted in his iawe belowe; so as the monster found himself fast in the teeth of mine Hippopotame, gagged with the lance, and not able to shut his mouth for the paine of the yron piercing his sensible parts: the which one of my men called Cestophon apperceiuing, with a merueilous hardines and readines, with his naked sword in his hand leaped into the depth of the monsters throte so far, that he found out his verie entrails and heart, which he hurt and wounded with so many blowes of his sword, that he might seele the monster weakened: wherefore sodainely he retired himselfe out of this monstrous body, and rendered himselfe to vs againe. The horse Durat in the meane while slinging with his foete, and training with his teeth this monster vnto the Shore: who through anguish of death, beating the water with his taylor had (like a tempest) moued and disquieted all the Sea, boyling and dyed with the abundance of bloud which hee shed: so as three dayes round about, it seemed to be the red sea betweene Arabia and Aethiopia: when we were arrived at the Shore, Du-

A Prouerbe  
in France  
when one  
meeteth  
with his  
match.

rat, let goe the monster Trolual vpon the sands, whome by reason of his waight hee could no longer vnde, because his life was fayled and through dead, to the great Joy of all the people dwelling about the Sea coast. And this was the cause why the King of Tangut and all his people renderd vs so many thanks with most rich and honourable presents.

This selfe same evening Alestor stirred vp with a most ardent desire and impatience of longer carrying, with most earnest exposition, humbly prayd me for the first request of the Son to his Father, that if I loued him, at the selfesame houre I should make him a knight, which I as one that could not refuse to do any thing for him, easily priued to his request, for the accomplishment whereof, going about to speake the solemne words and to lift vp mine arme to giue him the accolade, all humane puissance faileth me, as though I had had the palsy, of tongue, arme, and all the parts of my bodie: and when I left off, my puissance and force came againe to mee, and as I would haue proued to reiterate the same twise or thrise, so often this palsey came vpon me; whereby I conjectured that either the time serued not therunto, or els that I was not be ordaind of the heauens that should giue Alestor the order of Knighthood. And therefore for that time I left off to make any more prooffe, deferring it till another time and place to my great shame; and no lesse sorrowe of Alestor: in this fearefull confusion all of vs went to rest, and the next day we mounted vpon the great horse Hippopotame betaking our selues to the high Septentrionall Seas: where Durat stretched out his large floating scete, and reared his wings, carrying vs away so lightly & hee rather seemed to flye than goe. Alberto of Alestor (who neuer had ridden ouer the fishes) was so much amazed and glad as could bee: wherefore through great desire of vilsconering the furthest part of the immensall space of the Seas, like a young, greedy, and nimble youth as he was, he mounted (now goe I to record my mortall griefes) hee mounted (alas) hee mounted to the top of one of the wings of my horse

hopst Dardanus stoules with his lance and shield which  
 hee would not abandon, And as hee was perching in the  
 highest, beholding on the one side the mountains of the re-  
 gion of Bator; and the hils Amubies, which seemed to rise  
 from vs: and on the other side the great Seas without bot-  
 toms of shipe: and Heating with he then in faith called on him  
 as defend: But behold (alas) beholde, a strong winter stole  
 from the Hyperborean parts; or rather a strong Sney and  
 wicked trouble some spirit who taking him by the shield, ele-  
 uated into the ayre in my deere Sonne Alector trying from the  
 ayrie Regions to soude as he would haue me my Lady Frig-  
 Gal, help me my most deere Father wherefore you shall see  
 mee, and I you, for Galathea carrieth me away. In say-  
 ing these words, in my presence and when he was suddenly  
 transported towards the land: and the high Mountains,  
 Townes and Regions, so as at all instant I lost the sight of  
 him. And as though he had carried away my heart and my  
 soule with him, I remained of extream pale and pale,  
 ready to cast my selfe from the top of my house into the Sea,  
 had not my men kept me, who by all means possible com-  
 forted mee, shewing mee, that seeing he was carried to the  
 land, there was little danger, and greater hope of recovering  
 him againe, in seeking towards that part whereto I saw him  
 carried. At these words hauing recovered my spirites, and  
 come againe to my selfe, I cried out saying: Oh how true was  
 how true of signification was the phantastical vision  
 which happened to me at my first arrivall in Scythia at  
 my returne from the Indies beyond the Ganges in the golden  
 Regions, whereto I ensigned the ignorant people the  
 baleur and vlsage: and where I lay sleeping upon the Le-  
 ons skins in the place where my Lady Priscaraxe came  
 and found me first dreaming, how the Harygold enclined  
 towards mee: which was thou O Priscaraxe daughter of  
 Phoebus, and the Basilisk couered in the roote, who after flew  
 away, carrying my heart with him: which is thou O A-  
 lector Basilisk, little King, and royal child, it is thou that  
 being eleuated by some Spirits Amorous of thee and  
 enuious

envious of mee, hath rauished thee through the ayre into a strange land, carrying away my heart, which is my soule, my thought, and my life. O heauens! O Gods! Wherefore do you not content your selues to permit misfortunes to happen, without sending of vs other prodigions and significations to our double torment: first with the feare, and after with the euill. For what other thing threatened the rauishing Vultur, the speckled Dove comming towards mee with the greene branch of bay leaues, but only the rauishing of my sayre Alecto carrying in signe of noblenes a chaine of gold, and come towards me with good netwes: But of this that I saw him become a stroke discomfiting the serpent, I cannot coniecture what it should signifie, (but onely his pitie and childly loue, which is naturall to this bird:) and the warres against those which are wicked. And that once againe (in spight of the sinister Rauen resting on my head, which threatneth me of my nere death) I shall see thee, though but a while. Wherefore I swear and make a vow that I shall neuer cease traueilling, and searching the world, and neuer returne towards thee (O Queene Priscaraxe) till I have found thy Sonne automne; that with both of vs thou maist receiue ioy of our presence, as I think thou hast had great sorrowe in our absence. Then turned I my Hippopotame towards the land, whereto I had scene Alecto carried, which was vpon the coasts of Issedon, of the Gangeticq Indies, of Siues, of the silken lands, and regions of gold. To traueirse the which I entred one of the mouthes of the great river Occhardes, coasting the Nubian lake in searching all those countries, vntill I came to the next port, where I took land at the singing of a bird which sayd thus:

*Get thee to Orbe and thou shalt finde in deede,  
The sturdie stroke ywith the Serpent vile:  
Where if thine eyes take not full chary beede  
It may perchance bis sight from thee exile.*

The which hauing well obserued, and enquiring the way to  
Orbe,

Orbe, I haue found thee (O Archier) in a good houre, who:  
hast solaced mee with thy good and pleasant talke, and with:  
thy sweete patience in hearing my sad and discomfortable  
discourses: but a sorrowfull and passionated heart, findeth it  
selfe verie much alledged, if it may get some Sympathie:  
thi person to whome it may declare his dolours, as I haue  
done to thee (O good old man) who hast patiently giuen eare  
to the rehearfall of my diuers and sinister aduentures, with  
compassion and condoliance, as thy teares themselves doe  
witnes: (and thereupon the Archier, wept pittifullie) and in  
this patience and communication of thy good talke and com-  
panie, (for the which I thank thee) thou hast conducted mee  
hether to this place, which as I think is the towne of Orbe:  
(and at that instant they entred into the gate of Orbe.)

It is truly the Citie of Orbe (quoth the Archier) where  
is the faire Theatre, and the magnificall temple of God Ioue,  
wherof (for not dissembling with thee) I am the Arch-priest  
and great sacrificer, hauing neere to the temple a most ample  
and fayre lodging where I dwell ordinarily, well garnished  
(thanks be to GOD) with all things necessarie to the life of  
man: where I beseech thee in honour of Ioue Xenios to take  
thy lodging and right of hospitalitie with mee, for the night  
hath welcomed on, and it is time to huate towards rest, where wee  
may after at our ease atchieue the residue of our talke. This  
offer presented by the good old Archier with his entier heart,  
Franc-Gal refused not, but willingly accepted of it, thanking  
him for his gentle hospitalitie, and went with him: his  
Squire Oplophor following him, who of such and so long  
sermons willingly fed not himself, thinking it long that they  
were not already housed. So entred they into the towne at  
the east gate called porte Physe (for the Citie of Orbe was  
great and excellent fayre, such as hereafter shall be described)  
so went they forwards through a great, long, large, and  
streight street (where euery one in passing by did reuerence to  
the Archier) vntill they came into a most large place where  
the foure great streets of the foure principall gates met to-  
gether, and in the mids of the place was the great Dome or

temple builden round, the sayest and most magnificall which possibly was to be seene, and so high, that the top thereof seemed to exceede the clouds. At the instance of the Archier they entred therein, & before the altar which was in the midst they knelted downe with adoration and thanks giuing, lifting vp their eyes and looking vp towards heauen through a rounde lantern which was right ouer the altar in the top and midst of the pinacle, where infinite lampes were hanging burning and shining night and day, which set forth the place most worshipfull and princelike. Their prayers done they arose, and by a little doore in the temple whereof the Archier had the key, they entred into a saye house which was the Archiers dwelling, very sumptuous and magnificall, where they entred into a saye and great hall hong with rich tapistrie, with large and high windowes glassed with imagerie, and hauing prospect into saye gardens and orchards. In which hall chiefly the tables were covered, and water brought in, and they two sitting downe alone, were serued with delicate and exquisit meates. Franc-Gal seeing none set but them twaine, asked where the Mistresse of the house was? The mistresse of the house (quoth the Archier) is none other then Reason and Sapience, sent by the Soueraigne, by whome all this house is ruled and governed: for being from my natiuitie vowed to sacred things (which ought purely to bee handled) neither my body nor heart consenting, haue euer been polluted with woman, nor other fleshelic touchings, nor shall not be I hope. For hauing by diuine grate kept the virginall puritie wherein I was borne, vntill this present age, which is foure hundred and fiftene yeares, till white snowes and colde frosts which lye on the tops of the mountaynes, sufficiently declare that there shall not bee much more heate belowe in the valleys. And for so much as by reuelation made in the assembly of the people, I was constituted Archier, that is to say Prince or chiefe of the sacreds, and not an Archer shooter, although for the auoyding of idleness the Mother of all vices, commonly I exercise my selfe to shoote in a Bowe at the beastes and birds estranged from

from men, in which as thou foundest me, and savedst me  
from the beastemie to man, of whome I take no hede.  
And so I was and am yet Arch-priest and principall sacri-  
ficer of the temple of Ioue. By whose revelation and ad-  
monition, I knowe of thy comming into this countrey be-  
foze I saw thee, and to encounter and receive thee I was  
sent by him to the place where thou didst finde me: the rest,  
I will communicate vnto thee to morowe: for now the  
houre of nightly prayer calleth me to mine office, get thee to  
rest in peace. This spoken the Archier went to the temple,  
wherein he entred all alone, about the first Vigile of the night  
making fast the doore after him. On the other side two Di-  
nisters with two candlesticks of silver and two cerges of  
pure and swete waxe conducted Franc-Gal into a faire cham-  
ber all wainscotted with Cypres, and laid him in a bed of Ebo-  
nie garnished with clothes of red veluet with fringes of sat-  
tain, the curtaines of cassacie changeable white and black, and  
the tresser of greene and hyoune, sowd with teares of sil-  
uer. At all which things Franc-Gal (who was one of the wis-  
est men in all the nine ages) took great heede, with obserua-  
tion of the euill presage which all these things shewed in signi-  
fication of his death nere at hand for he knew vs well that the  
Cypres was a funerall & sepulchear tre, and that the cerges  
belonged to buriall that the Ebonie was a good staking to the  
bottome of the waters: the red fringed with sky colour, to  
be the vermillion life turning into leadie and mortall heauie-  
nes: and the changeable curtaines of white and black to be a  
signe of change from light to darkenes, & from life to death.  
Wherefoze Franc-Gal who was of singular and almost di-  
uine wisdom, remembryng his oracles, visions, threatnings  
sent him by the spirit of the black Knight, the Augurie of the  
Rauen, & rauishment of his Son Alectoꝛ, knew by foresight  
that his death was ordained, and which hee concluded  
to bee nere at hand without any feare or sorowe, say-  
ing onely that he had not scene his welbeloued Priscaraxe  
and his deere Sonne Alectoꝛ once befoze his death. For  
the humane condition of mortall men is such, that

neuer man (how unfortunate soeuer hee bee) dieth without sorowe of some thing left imperfect. Notwithstanding Franc-Gal after many and diuers thoughts tormenting his heart, finally concluded to that which was necessarie, and humbly to submit himselfe to the diuine immouable ordinances: and with this resolution after long waking he fell into a doubtfull sleepe about the second crowe of the Cock, a litle before the breake of day at such time as the moisture of the night falling either into dew or hoarie frost, bringeth vpon the sleepe vpon all creatures.

*The mornings Adoration of the Orbitans, the description of the temple, and the manner of prayer and sacrifice. The Sermon of the Archier and chiefe Priest, and the common prayer of all in Musick,*

## CAP. XXII.



The next day after the Sunne was vp, the Archier led Franc-Gal to the temple, whose gates were already open, & the people come thither in great multitudes to the morning adoration: Franc-Gal went on one side of the altar kneeling downe to prayer, and the Archier remained before the altar prostrate in long and silent prayer with the heart and not with the mouth. Likewise all those who came into the temple presently adored him whome they sawe not, in prayers of onely thought without mouing of tongues or lips, but with their eyes elevated on high in most deep and admirable silence, for the imperiall reuerence of the place which was in perfect roundnes mounted vpon thirteene pillers onely, but so great and massive by reason of their height (which seemed to reach vp to heauen) that the thirteene arches were most large and spacious: with the top and round pinnacle ouer the midd by a great round

round boale of three fadom in the diameter, giuing open view  
and prospect to the heauens: and the curtaines of the walls  
cōposed on thirteē porches with galleries erected one aboue  
another, whereto they mounted by foure vices of stappes,  
found out at the third, seauenth, tenth and thirteenth pillar;  
and in these galleries whose windows were of clere glasse  
open behinde and carued before, were builded seats of marble  
to sit in, and desks before to knée and leane vpon. The  
lower part also was round about garnished with seates and  
baults of Cedar, Ebanie, Cypres, white Arabie, browne nut  
tree, and all other wood meete for workmanship; which  
bancks and seates were assigned for the women to sit in. As  
for the beautie and magnificence interuall of the temple, it  
was not like to a grange or desolate house voyde of orna-  
ment, but it was in all parts filled and repaired with many di-  
uers and fayre figures, images, statues, and paintings of  
stone, wood, iuorie and other things, gilded, siluered, azured,  
and coulozed with all fayre and illustrate pigments and met-  
talls: which images and statues naturally and liuely repre-  
sented, not onely the heroycall persons of men and women  
of vertue: but also all beasts, birds, and fishes, which flye, go,  
or swimme in the earth, ayre, or waters. Neither were the  
liuing creatures onely pictured, but also the insensible crea-  
tures which are in the two inferiour elements: each one hauing  
his seuerall deuise in short writing appoynted, according to  
their naturall propertie, in attestation of the greatnes puis-  
sance, gloze and grace of the Soueraigne God whome they  
named Ioua. As for example.

Vpon the statue of the man was written.  
*Of straightnes God hath giuen thee a gift,  
That thou to heauen thine eyes shouldst lift.*

Vpon the statue of the woman.  
*Thou art endowd with beautie and grace,  
That vertue in thee might haue a place.*

Vpon the statue of the Elephant.  
*Of bounty and great puissance,*

## The first part

*Is our great God his essence.*

*And belowe.*

*God to the good death not deny,  
Both prudence, force, and life for ay.*

*Vpon the figure of the Serpent.*

*He that is borne to doo euill,  
Shall be condemned to the Diuell.*

*Vpon the bird Phoenix.*

*One onely of himselfe hath bene,  
Whom neuer man as yet hath seene.*

*Vpon the Dolphin carrying Arion on the Sea;  
The friend of man, is God: whose grace  
Doth him defend in euerie place.*

*Vpon the figure of the Nightingale.*

*Each spirit in earth and heauen above,  
Singeth to Ioue praises of loue.*

*Vpon the Palme tree.*

*The lower fortune dooth thee abate:  
The higher to heauen lift vp thy face.*

*Vpon the flower de Lis.*

*Whom vertue hath endued,  
With honour is reued.*

*Vpon the Rose.*

*A pure soule as I suppose,  
To God is like a fragrant Rose.*

*Vpon the Marygold.*

*Towards the Sonne diuine,  
Turne thou both spirit and eyne.*

Thus with such images, statues and simulachres, of men, birds, beasts, serpents, fishes, trees, plants, and other things naturally and liuely portrayed, graven, created, cut, & diuersely figured, with painting, colouring, gilding, siluering, and gemining, the interior part of the temple was so illustrate, ly decozated and enriched and seemed so lightsome, sayre, delectable, and honorable to behold and so instructiue in the inscriptions, with the contemplation of these sayre things (outwardly

(outwardly shewing and declaring the glory of God and by the windows of the eyes, entering into the understanding to illuminate the same) that they ravished the interior spirits with an ineffable admiration of the bountie, greatness, and puissance of God, pelving the temple so devout, religious, reverent, adorable and Imperiall, that those who entred therein found themselves transamed, and divinely ravished as it had beene in a trance. Such was the interior ornament of the Temple, in the middell whereof was the place of sacrifice elevated upon thirtene steps of Marble and porphyrie of all colours, and above that was the Altar erected, builded and wrought after the rusticall fashion with all kinde of rude Stones in the proprietie and naturall fashion, without cut, worke, or polishing of mans hand. And upon that was laid even and leuell a saype, great and large table of artificiall omtrauld in forme square, having thirtene foot in every square, and set iust right under the clere window or lantern of the temple whereon neuertheles miraculously neuer raine fell, neuer wind perceived, nor neuer any tempest touched. About the altar were set nine chaires guilded, covered and garnished with silke velvet, which were the seats of the Ministers serving at the altar, and on the East side right opposite to the great doore (which was Westward) there was thre pillars of Jasper nine foot high set triangle wise, in such sort that one was before towards the altar, and two behind; upon which pillars was set a tabernacle of sweete wood, wrought, carved and guilded with fine beaten Golde, and open behinde, and within the same a very saype chaire of Iudric. This tabernacle was the pulpet, whereas the propheticall word was shewne unto the people by the Archier; such was the Dome and Temple of Ioue in the Citie of Orbe, which hereafter we wil describe. After then that the Archier being chiefe Priest, his nine Ministers, together with Franc-Gal and the people were entred into the Temple, they prostrated themselves on their faces and from time to time held up their eyes and hands to heauen, & so continued their adorations and mental prayers about one houre in great silence,

the

the Archier and chiefe Priest arose, and after hee had turned to the people, and vniuersally saluted and blessed them, he was by thre of his ministers mounted into the pulpit vpon the foresaide thre Iasper pillars: where after hee had a while lifted vp his eyes to Heauen in high conception of thought, he addressed himselfe to the people with a cleere and intelligible voyce, after this manner.

” You people of Orbe who are here gathered together to  
 ” heare of mee (who am but a voyce crying in the temple) the  
 ” great magnificences of God: that you may vnderstand them  
 ” and comprehend them in your soules, that you may praise  
 ” them, heare them, and thanke him for them; his infused grace  
 ” for the accomplishing hereof forthwith be giuen you, with  
 ” his benediction.

” The Soueraigne God Ioua, which Was, Is and Shalbe;  
 ” a name which is aboue all names, and which appertaineth to  
 ” none other but him: first hath made you of nothing, which  
 ” is an especiall gift of his marueilous puissance, that you a-  
 ” boue all other things know that of him you hold your being  
 ” and first essence. And after that he hath created you, not ig-  
 ” noble bodies, as stones and mettals; not insensible plants, as  
 ” hearbes or trees; not brutall, deformed, cruel or monstrous  
 ” beasts; as if it had pleased him, he might haue formed you but  
 ” Asses, ill shapen pottage pots, villanous Codes, cruell rani-  
 ” shing wolues, or monstrous imaginations: but he hath crea-  
 ” ted you men, sayre & right, looking vp to heauen, whereby you  
 ” hold the roote of reason which he hath giuen you: by whō you  
 ” are made like to himselfe, & by him formed to his own image.  
 ” Besides this, he hath made al other creatures, the elements,  
 ” yea the celestiaall bodies themselves, and heauens for you, and  
 ” for your vse and seruice: the earth, to sustaine & nourish you  
 ” quick, and receiue you when you be dead: the ayre, to keepe  
 ” your soule in life: the waters, for your vsage, cleansing, and  
 ” nauigation: the fire, to reuiue your heate, and for your light:  
 ” the Starres, for tokens and influences: and the heauens, to  
 ” receiue your soules which hee hath giuen you immortall,  
 ” through spirituall ppiueledge aboue all other creatures, who  
 being

being once dead, nothing remaine moze of them. All beasts  
 he hath condemned with their heads enclining towards the  
 earth, in signe that they be subiect and seruiceable to you who  
 are directly eleuated : some for your help, as horses, oxen, as-  
 ses, and cammels, yea the great and strong Elephant dooth  
 serue and obey you : the others for meate and nourishment,  
 who by their deathes conserue your liues. See you not the  
 good fishes both of riuer and Sea, swimming in your porra-  
 ges, brothes, sauces, and iuce ? Do you not see the fish, fat,  
 and entrailes of beasts aswell sauage as tame, to enter into  
 your kitchens ; and the foules of the ayre to fall into your  
 dishes ; and all trees, hearbs, plants, coynes, seeds, fruites and  
 rootes to bee giuen you for nourishment and medicine ? And  
 all this of the grace of God, and to his glozy, as the worke-  
 manship, figures, and statues of this temple do show you  
 for visible examples : whose architecture & building is made  
 to the paterne and imitation of the vniuersall world, which  
 is the true temple of soueraigne Ioue, whose bounty and glo-  
 ry all these things do witnes and set forth. Consider then  
 ye Orbitars, and acknowledge how many and how large  
 benefits, the most great and most good blessing of God hath  
 enlarged you with, to whome you can restore nothing : for  
 what thing can you offer him, that is none of his, whose  
 thyoane is heauen, and earth his footstole : what then would  
 this most great and good Lord aske you which is your owne,  
 and in your power to giue him, for such infinite goodnes  
 whereof hee hath been your authoz and giuer : with certaine  
 promises and infallible pemonstrance of moze greater and  
 moze durable hereafter, yea euermlasting, such as he bestoweth  
 vpon the superioz and blessed spirites, which ordinarily assist  
 him in endles praise and glorification of his bountie and pu-  
 issance, befoze the thyoan of his diuine maiesty : What requi-  
 reth he of you ? O what can you giue him of your own ? He  
 desireth no other thing of you (my friends) but a very small  
 retribution and acknowledge, neuertheles he will that it pro-  
 ceede from you and from your hearts. Hee will nothing of  
 you for so many and infinite benefits, but onely a simple and

„ little grauertie, one onely thanks giuing and one collauda-  
 „ tion and glozification to the benefactor: the which we would  
 „ gladly doe to any mortall man, for any small pleasure that he  
 „ should haue done vs. But hee will that this recognisance,  
 „ this thanks giuing and retribution of glozie bee giuen him  
 „ of your owne proper, pure, and best of the heart, without  
 „ fayning or dissimulation, which cannot be hidden from him.  
 „ For without comparison hee seeth more claretie into our  
 „ thoughts than wee doo see into these exterior things, where-  
 „ in our corporall senses may be decciued, but hee not, because  
 „ hee is a most pure and simple Spirit. Wherefore (my  
 „ friends) in humble and hartie thanks giuing for so many  
 „ benefits which hee hath already bestowed vpon vs, which he  
 „ daily dooth, and promisceth to doo in time to come: chiefly  
 „ for that hee hath this day revealed by mee that this Citie  
 „ and common wealth shall bee presently deliuered of a great  
 „ euill wherewith it is troubled: for these infinite of benefits  
 „ let vs render vnto him all together with one heart and true  
 „ zeale, with one faith thought, and will, and with one speech  
 „ and voyce, thanks, honour, glozie, and praise for euer and e-  
 „ uer world without end.

This Sermon finished, the pontificall Archier and his  
 nine Ministers with diuers voyces muscally accoꝝding, in  
 quauering Trebles, deepe Basses, sweete Tenors and  
 Harpe Contratenors, together with Organes, Lutes,  
 Harpes, Viols, Psalterions, Recorders and all sorts of  
 Muscally instruments no lesse harmonious than religious,  
 the hands and tunes accoꝝding with their voyces, song these  
 words and sentences following.

*O Soueraigne God of great infinitie,  
 Blessed be thou for our humanitie:  
 Doo not refuse to heare the harmonie  
 Of this vnite accorded companie:  
 Crying to be heard from thy sublimitie.  
 The gentlenes of thy diuinitie  
 Our aduerse fate with fortune dooth supplie.*

*Honor*

*Honor and praise to thee O Lord on high:  
Who art the giver of our wealth and store  
Grace, praise, and thanks, we yeeld to thee therefore.*

The pontificall Archier and his Ministers hauing sung this Psalme of thanks giuing in example: all the people answering, sung with great deuotion the same words in like tune, accords, and sounds of instruments. And after this saye song in deuout prayer, magnificall praise, and reuerent thanks giuing to the Soueraigne God Ioue, was song vniuersally by all the assistants in the Temple in harmonious accord not onely of voyce and words, but also of one faith and intelligence in heart: euerie one of them came with great reuerence and presented himselfe at the Altar, humblie offering in signe of recognizance of the diuine benefits, that which they thought best: some ornaments and vessels of silver and golde, of chrystall, stone, and precious wood, and other matter of valew; some emptie, and others full of swete liquors, balmes, myrre, incense, perfumes and odorements, of the sauor whereof all the people breathed: others offered clothes of silke, wooll and flaxe, of all sorts and colours: others brought white bread, hot cakes, and smoking pasties: other vessels and flaggons of the best wine they had, but aboue all things they offered willingly their first frutes and their first bozne, whome they presented to God, and the Archier, gaue them back againe in exchange and redemption of some fowles or little innocent beasts: as of a payre of Piggions or Turtle Doves, or of a Lambe or white Kid. Likewise offered they the first frutes of their Wheats, graines, trees, vines, plants, and gardens, in acknowledge of the benignitie of GOD which euerie yeare gaue them encrease. And if they were of handie crafts, they presented the first of their workes and most excellentest peeces of their labors, in attestation that they held their inuention of the Spirite of GOD. All which gifts beeing placed and set vppon the Altar, the Archier blessed; in praying Ioue to extend his hand ouer them in benediction,

and perely multiplication. Then the ministers gathered them together, taking for the Archier and themselves that which seemed to them best (for hee which serueth at the Altar must liue of the Altar) and distributing the rest to the poore, aged, sick, lame of body, deprived of sense, and to the poore widowes and orphelins, as well of the towne, as of the countrey, being receiued, lodged and nourished, in a great common lodging called Vaniah: but the sayest and best was reserued for the nourishing & honest entertainement of such persons as had well merited of the common wealth of Orbe in what thing soener. For such persons as by vertue, prowesse, counsaile, deuotion, or other meritorious act, had done any great good to the common wealth: were honozably remunerated, by estate, nourishment and publique entertainement in a pallace called Prytan as hereafter shall bee declared. Beholde how ordinarily the goods of the temple were distributed by the order of the chiefe Priest: who, hauing done his office and the people retired home, or where they thought best, returned into his lodging, leading with him his guest Franc-Gal; for whome hee tooke great care, by reason of a vision and reuelation which appeared to him the euening before, and was such as followeth.

*The vision of the Archier in the Temple, signifying the death of Franc-Gal. The assembly of the Magistrates and people in the Pretorian Basilique. The oracle of the Charites found written in their hands: With the iudgement and preparation of Alceior against the serpent.*

## CAP. XXIII.



he first night that Franc-Gal was receiued into the house of the Archier, after they had supped, and talked, and that he was conducted into his resting chamber, which seemed to meet full unto him,

as hath been shewne: the Archier according to his custome went to the temple to his euening prayers, where as he was praying, generally for all, but especially for his guest Franc-Gal that he might heare good newes of that which he sought for: it seemed to him of a sudaine to heare the deadly hissing of an Adder, and the intempestiue crowe of a Cock, for as yet it was not the second Vigile of the night. And hereupon through the lanterne in the top of the temple, hee might perceiue a light, resembling a most clere Starre to fall vpon the Altar, which no sooner had toucht the table of emerauld, but it kindled and arose in a high and right flame, which neuerthelesse mounted decreasing: and incontinently after this Starre followed a Swan as white as snowe, who rested her selfe hard by this celestiall fire, and with the sweete blast of Zephyrus began her deadly song, which shee is accustomed by nature to sing vpon the banks of the crooked river of Meander when shee is reposed vpon the wet grasse, and perceiueth her death at hand: and in singing distilled from her eyes aboundance of teares which fell vpon the Starric fire, and quenched it by little and little: the swanne likewise affabbling both in voyce and life, according as the fire diminished: in such sort that at the last teare which the swanne shed, she died, and the fire vanished flaming vp into heauen from whence it was descended. By this vision, the Archier incontinently understood, that the latter end of Franc-Gal was nere at hand, and that hee should shortly dye through some dolorous or topfull cause. Wherefore in the morning before his entrie into the Temple, hee went to visite him, but hee found him not in his chamber; whereon looking out at the windowe he perceiued him walking in the garden very pensiue, whereinto he went and saluted him: Franc-Gal saluted him againe in a voyce very low and hidden. Then the Archier asked him wherefore he was risen before day, and had not taken his rest at his ease: (quoth Franc-Gal) is very nere, so far as I understand by many presages, but chiefly this night through the phantasie of mine vnquietnes, which haue not suffered me to repose: to the end they might prepare a durable sleepe

for mee, without waking untill the revolution of the world. And therefore let vs goe to the Temple to pray and giue thanks to him, who hath permitted our being till this present: so went these two good wise men right to the temple to accomplish the sacrifice, such as hath already been rected. Which being done the greatest part of the people assembled themselves at the great Basilique Dicaste, where Diocles bore rule as Potentate of Orbe, with all the Benchers, Pagistrates, Lords, and notable Citizens. Before whom was brought this young Squire Alector who (by the Gracians) had been accused of so many crimes, whereby the death of their fayre sister Noëmia was happened: the which Alector but three daies before had beene adiudged by sentence of the diuine Justice, to proue his innocencie, by fighting with the great serpent of the Sands. This young Squire coming before the face of the magistrates, of the whole iustice, and of the Potentate, shewed himselfe so assured and braue, as they seemed to bee seuerer and graue, demanding at that instant Justice against the murdering Archer of his fayre and welbeloued Noëmia, whome he bewailed without ceasing: for the rest, neither hauing nor showing any thought or care either of his proper person, life, or death, saying onelie that hee might reuenge his fayre Noëmia. Then Diocles the Potentate showed to all the benchers of the counsaile, the little bill which the day before he had found betwene the hands of the statues of Alabaster of the three Graces, where in these verses were written.

*The Arrowe being in the hand  
Of vanquisher, reuenger of  
His Ladies death, she vengeance shall,  
From Heauen above descend vpon  
The murderer of Noëmia fayre.  
And shortly after that shall end,  
The Pilgrims life and voyage long,  
Through fearefull fright and sudaine ioy.*

*This*

This bill, being first declared from whence it came and in  
 whose hands it was found; was taken for a diuine token, and  
 allowed of all with common sentence that the arrowe where-  
 with Noemia was slaine, should bee put into the hands of  
 Alector to see what would happen. Who being called into  
 the Iudgement place was demanded of Diocles, if hee re-  
 membered not the condemnation of combat with the serpent,  
 whereto he had been adiudged? and whether he disposed not  
 of himselfe to obey the sentence. Yes (quoth he most hardie  
 and assuredly) and I thank you too for the hono<sup>r</sup> which you  
 doe mee: neither wish I any better, but that the traitorous  
 murtherer of Noemia were also ioynd with the serpent,  
 that of them both I might make a sacrifice of reuenge vnto  
 the Spirit of my deceased Noemia. May it therefore please  
 the heads of Justice to garnish me with mine armes, which  
 are my good sword, with the Iberian scabbard shining, and  
 my shield with the hardie Cock, which I brought from the  
 Trophie of Gallehault. Showing thereby that all beasts  
 by nature are muniated with their owne proper armes aswel  
 for defence as offence. The Lyons (quoth hee) haue their  
 griping pawes, the Elephants their trunkes, the Harts and  
 Bulls their hoznes and forsetes: the hozses haue their biting  
 before and perking behind; the Boies their tusks, the Coy-  
 topes and shell fishes their hardnes, the Bees their sting, the  
 Scorpions their tailed, the Serpents their venym, tongue,  
 and deadly teeth; onely man is hozne without armes, as a  
 creature of peace, vnles with their owne handie worke and  
 labo<sup>r</sup> they obtaine, or conquer them: as I haue gotten this  
 sword of my Fathers gift, and therefore proper to me; and  
 my shield by mine owne conquest: which armes onelie (for  
 others appertaine not to mee being but a simple Squire) I  
 require to be restozed and put into my hands, that I may not  
 be found a naked man and vnarmed of all weapons aswel of-  
 fensue as defensue against this terrestiall enemy of man, ar-  
 med with malice, subtiltie, force, nimble lightnes, piercing  
 teeth, dangerous tail & mortal popson: besides that, with hard  
 shaples on his lubzick skin: whereas I being naked and  
 vngar.

„ vngarnished of all defence against such and so well armed an  
 „ enemy: if I be overcome, it shall be mine owne euill and da-  
 „ mage in particular; but in generall it shall be the shame, re-  
 „ proach, and confusion of those men who hereafter shall bee  
 „ slaine and deuoured by the most wicked of all beasts: whom  
 „ Soueraigne God (which you call Ioua) hath condemned to  
 „ be troden vnder the fée of man, vnto whom power is giuen  
 „ to tread vpon the Aspic and Basilisque, and to fople with his  
 „ fée the Lyon and Dragon: which you shall see come to  
 „ passe, (GOD giuing mee the force) if you restore mee mine  
 „ armes, which haue bin vniustly taken from me, and the which  
 „ I here demand before your Justice.

The Potentate and all the Magistrates were amercuelled,  
 not onely at the braue hardines of Alestor (which naturally  
 might come of the fire of his age) but much moze of his libe-  
 rall eloquence and reasonable wisdome before age, albeit he  
 were farre yonger than they took him to bee. Wherefore  
 presently they caused his armes to be brought forth, deliuer-  
 ing to him his good sword with þ scabberd of the shining ser-  
 pents skinne, and his greene shield with the Cock of Golde;  
 which he receiued with so great ioy, as they had bene taken  
 from him with great sorrowe and lamentation. And besides  
 that, the Potentate Diocles following the aduertisement of  
 the Archier, and the Oracle written by the Charites, put into  
 his hand an arrow being bloudy halfe way to the feathers:  
 which he took, and after he had beheld it a long time (as one  
 which he had somewhat knowne to haue pulled out of the bo-  
 dy of Noëmia) demanded what arrowe it was? And what  
 hee should doo with it? To whome it was answered, that it  
 was the same arrowe wherewith Noëmia was slaine, and  
 that he should doo with it as the fencer dooth in the Sands.  
 Then cried he with a loude voyce to all the assistance, if there  
 were any that would challenge it against him? But no man  
 answered word. Wherefore hee fastned it vnder his girdle,  
 and sayd: Now my Lords let vs go when it pleaseth you, see-  
 ing I haue mine armes, I am ready to fight against this dra-  
 gon and publique enemy, and to reuenge the priuat iniurie  
 of

of murder if the traytor may be found. Then the Potentate sent foure trumpets through all the streets of the towne to crye and publish to the people that at noone, a hardie and valiant champion should fight with the Dragon of the sands in hazard and perill of his life, for the publique weale, and expiation of certaine manslaughter by him perpetrated, and by his cause happened; and for that cause who soever would, should come and see it.

At this crye all the Citizens prepared themselves to go see this dilectable and profitable spectacle: where were founde a greater number of people than euer were at the sands for one assemble. To which place Alector was conducted by 400. Souldiers, deputed to garde and close the field: at this tumult Franc-Gal and the Archier who after dinner sat at the windowes of the great hall looking into the street were minded to demand what it was, and hauing vnderstood the cause, determined to goe thither (albeit the Archier was not often times found at such sports) neuerthelesse he was enuited to goe, in hope to see the revelation come to passe which was shewed to him of the publique weale. As for Franc-Gal he was come thither for none other cause, but onely to see his Sonne at the Sands of the Theatre according as the black Auguring bird had foretold him. So went these two wise men together to this new spectacle.

A description of the Citie of Orbe, of the Basilique, Hyppodrome, Prytan Theatre, Sands and other places.

CAP. XXIIII.



The Citie of Orbe was so called for the round forme and fashion of the same: situated vpon a little high mountaine, yet neuertheles verie large, in halfe roundnes like to a demie Globe in such sort as the mid was the highest & most prospectue castlie bescontering round about, and descending

not headlong but by little & little pleasantly going downward in such sort as neither mounting nor descending one could scarce apperceine the elevation of the mids nor unevenness of the flos, so easily descended it unto the outwardmost walls wherewith it was enclosed in perfect circularitie, founded and builded of the hard bones of the Rock, of the hight of 30, fadomes and of the thicknes of thre: ramped with 19. grosse bulwarks with their knights and false lope holes, and garnished with towers and places of sentinells, and environed in stead of ditches with a great river called Clotierre, carrying great vessells charged and laden with all sorts of merchandise, comming from al the parts of the world. For they entered and went out of the Citie of Orbe by foure principall ports, the one orientall called Port Physe, another occidentall called Port Thane, the third meritionall called Port Valentine, and the last Septentrionall called Port Passante, and looke how many gates it had, so many bridges it had, that is to say: the little bridge, the bridge without garde, the burning bridge; and the trembling bridge: through and over which ports and bridge they entered and issued into the citie of fiesos there abouts, (for they had no suburbs) the territory of which fiesos contained a great countrey in compasse, divided into foure regions according to the partition and pores of the Citie, but of far different qualite & temperature. For in the territorie appertaining to Port Physe, the ayre was sweet by reason of Zephyrus comming from the west, and sending his last breath in this eastwardly region, the herbs, plants, and trees were alwaies in flower & grannes: the people were gracious and loving, contented with a little, not doing much other thing but dance, leap, gamball, run, sing, pipe and play upon instruments, court, contract marriages, or to aduance them or borrowe for the time to come to compose ballades, songs, sonnets, rounds, to search nouelties, to chase beasts and fowles, to fish and to cloth themselves in colours and to maintaine themselves without care or thought: for they were all of them either iuants, boyes, or yong folke of the one and the other sexe. And when they had passed their youth, they

nude

made their transmigration into þe territory of Port Valentine which was meridionall; of a hot ayre, inspired with the southerne or Etesian winds. And in the region of this gate grew aboundance of frutes of the tree, as also grasse & pasturing, with wheate and other corne of all sortes. In such sort that on that side the port one could see nothing but mowers, hay-makers, reapers, harness folk, fructifiers, merchants, travellers, traffickers, men of armes running at tilt, philosophers disputing, and blurers lending vpon revenues of the frutes to come; there might one behold store of cattell in the fields, aboundance of bees, butter flies, and emmits: and albeit the region was very hot and drie, yet the people so much the more refreshed themselves with the sayre flaggons coled in the clere and nineall fountaines.

From thence they passed to the Septentrionall Port Passant, where the ayre was diuers, vnconstant, cloude, colde, moyll, and troubled with contrarie winds: for the rest, a good countrey & herie cultine yelding peaches, grapes, nuts, & silberds, where one could see nothing but gathering of grapes, pressing of wines, cunying them & laying the into the cades: neuerthelesse the people of this countrey were almost all grey. The other region of Port Thane subject to the cutting western winds was very sterile and barren, saving that there was great store of fat cattaille, wildfoule, and venison, & this was the territozie where the greatest there was kept, neuerthelesse commonly in close houses where they kept their banquets, marriages and mummeries. There killed they continually store of hogs and shotes, making thereof sauciges, chitterlings and puddings: whereof as also of other things they sent presents & newpeares gifts one to another, for their entertainment in mutuall loue and friendship: and in this soile ordinarily dwelt the old men, who after they had serued God in the morning, passed the rest of the day in drinking, warming, talking, playing at cards, at glic, primero and flux, or els with the tables at checker, dames, louch, and tic tac. Such were the foure ports and foure sinages of the Citie of Orbe, where the inhabitants by the ordinance of the Magistrates of the towne passed all the yeare, and made their transmi-

gration from one port and region to another: for if they were wearie of the heats of Port Valentine, they went and refreshed themselves in the Ice of Port Thane, and passe the time there in sedentarie playes. And if they were cloyed with the mists and cold of Port Passaul, they would go dance amongst the flowers of Port Physc: for such power had the Citizens of the towne, wherein notwithstanding it was continually temperat, by reason of the concordant discord of the winds, temperatures, and qualities of euerie port, and of his adiacent territorie, the which made an equall concurrence at the closing of the towne: which (as hath been before saide) was in perfect soundnes mounting by little and little vnto the nauet or mids, where was edified the temple of Lone (before described) in the great place, where the foure great streets of the towne met, being builded verie ample and large with singular saye and magnificat edifices, and trauesed with a hundred smal streets turning round and alwaies descending in leuell with the foure great streets, the buildings were of such straight leuell, that from the temple one might view plainly to the foure ports of the Citie, and from the foure ports to the Temple. Before the which was a most saye and great fountaine: of lively, clere, and wholesome water, the spring thereof neuer defailling, but yelding forth abundance of water through 12. figures in manner and fashion to the 12. signes of the Zodiac: which made a brooke alwaies encreasing and turning about the lanes and streets of the whole towne, as well for the watering and common vse of men and beasts, as also for the purging and cleansing of the streets and houses; which spring and winding brooke being come downe vnto the latter and lowest circular street along the inwardmost wall; by how many springing heads it increased by so many pipes it emptied it selfe into the great river of Cloterre, wherein was made bounds & sluices to open and shut as occasion should serue: which sluices being shut, all the streets would stand full of water, wherewithall they being washed by opening againe of the sluices all the filthines and scaunge of the towne was sent through the foresaid sluices into

into Closterre, and by that meanes the Citie on all sides was kept cleanly and sayre. At the foure corners of the great and large market place were foure stately and publique edifices, that is to say: the great Basilique Dicast, the Pallace Prytan, the Hippodrome, and the Theatre: the Basilique Dicaste, was the iudiciall Pallace, or hall of iustice wherein were decided all causes and controuersies aswel ciuill as criminall. In the same was a long, large and ample hall whose mounting was of marble sayres, and whose entrance was by two gates on either side. This great hall was lofted and paved with sutable artifice all of white and black marble: the loft being duple was sustained by 40. pillers of grey stone, viz. 12. on either side & 12. in the mids parting the two lofts, and two in the vpper end of the hall and two below. At euery piller was fastned and set a rich and brave statue of a Legislator of some noble Justice passed with the inscription of his name and title of honour, and vpon the middle pillers were fastned twaine, on either side one. Betwene the pillers on either curtaine of the wall, on the highest towards the arch of the loft were sayre glasse windowes, decozated, painted & illustrated with ancient Histories, memorabile examples, excellent and singular sentences and executions of Justice: and beneath were fixed great brassen tables wherein with grosse letters legible a far off, were engraue, all their lawes: according to which (being once receaued in the common wealch of Orbe) the Citizens gouerned themselves. And for this reason were these lawes engraue in tables of brasse that none might pretend ignorance of the lawes: at one ende of the foresaide hall was a Parquet or place of audience closed with yron barres wrought and siluered, with two rowes of seats with their desks and footstoles: the one on high wherein were placed the Orators and aduocats and the other below wherein the pleaders sat, the complainants on the one side and the defendants on the other. Aboue and ouer against the end of this Parquet was eleuated a high Tribunal, all made of Ebovie wrought and sciled verie artificially, on both sides of which Tribunal were 24. seats somewhat so-

wer, that is to say: 12. on the right hand and 12. on the left: whereon the 24. Assesors and principall counsellors sat in cloth of veluet; and in the Tribunall, sat the Potentate and chiefe Justice: which Tribunall in stead of crimson veluet or cloth of gold, was hong and couered with the hideous skin of a dead man, which was sometime a Potentate and wicked Judge, and who for his tranuersing of iustice and abusing of his Soueraigne office had bene slain quick, and his skinne in stead of tapisserie put vpon the Justice seate to giue example to those who afterwards should sit therein, not to doo any iniustice worthe of so sharpe a punishment. On the two sides of the foresaide Tribunall was placed reasonable high, two statues, the one of golde which was the image of Justice cut and figured with a virginicall visage, neuerthelesse of a vehement and redoubtable regarde, the light of her eyes sharpe and pricking, neither humble nor fierce, but representing a certaine dignitie of reuerend sadnes: this statue was of Golde to signifie that as the Gold is incorruptible, so Justice ought to bee: and as it is soft and pliable, so ought Justice to be more soft and mercifull than rigorous and more bending to equitie. The statue was figured a Virgin, because that Justice ought to be entier, inviolated and uncorrupted, she was of face severe sad and constant, in signe that Justice ought not to giue eare to sweete words, prayers, flatteries nor praises: her regarde was fierce and vehement, to giue terror to the euill, and confidence and assurance to the iust and good. On the other side was a statue of fine Cristall cleere and white, portraicted all naked, which was the statue of Veritie: in signe that Justice is or ought to bee accompanied with Veritie, who of her selfe is cleere and euident, pure and without spot, and for that cause she was portraicted of white and most glistering Christall, and in forme of an naked body, for Veritie will haue no couering of fraude or dissimulation but sheweth her selfe as she is. Thus you may perceiue what their great hall of this Basilicq Dicaste with the Parquie and iudicial seate were: adioyning to the vpper ende whereof on the right and left hand

hand were two bodies of a house, membered with many chambers, and amongst the rest in either house was a right sayechamber in fashion of a squire squared hall, garnished round about with settles belowe, and with rich capistris about: for the rest cleane emptie of other things saving with tables and chayres about them: and both these chambers had entrance into the Parquie of the great Balican hall, the chamber on the right hand being called the counsell chamber: because whether the Potentate and Assesors retired themselves when any doubtfull iudgement was remitted to the counsaile. In the mids thereof, was a large table of marble round and Polygonal. For this table held 25. entrangular spaces, euery one of a fote and a halfe broade, and about the same so many chaires made haunchy of common wood. But one amongst the rest being more large was made of Cedar, wrought and guised with saye figures, with a footstool that bee which set vpon it might sit somewhat higher than the rest, and a cloth of estate and a pillowe of velvet whereon the Potentate and President did sit in the mids of this Marble table, was a little pillar of Christall, and on the same a statue of like matter Diaphane which represented the Image of Prudence in a feminine forme, not naked but covered with a long Cristallin stole, embroidered with damasquines of Gold, and fained with Golden Scarres. Nevertheless shee had thre heads that shee might bee better warned and more sage, the one was olde regarding the things past, another of meane age considering things present, and the third young, foreseeing things to come. In her right hand shee held a Lydian stone which some call a touch stone, and with her left hand shee presented a little table of Golde wherein were written these words in Greeke.

Αγαθή μνήμη ἡ ἀφροσύνη ἵσθι ἀνδρῶν.

Which is as much to say.

Prudence is alwaies a great Treasure.

And

And vpon the table of white marble was engraue in black this sentence in latten letters.

*Primum consulto opus est, deinde mature opus est facto.*

That is to say :

Take counsaile first, and then performe it speedily.

In this chamber was the counsaile held, and for that cause called the counsaile chamber; the other chamber on the left hand was called the chamber Sphragide, because that in it was signed and sealed all acts, instruments and exploitcs of Justice, written by faithfull personages thereunto deputed, and by solemne oath sworn: this chamber was like the other, saving that it had two long tables of the length of the hall alongst the wall, with glasse windows above, and long benches beneath with seats separated and distinct by little spaces like to the seats of the quire in a canonick Church, and therein were set the Pragmaticall writers in two ranks on the one side and the other of the two walls. neuertheless but onely on one side of the tables which was in the bench side next to the walls: the other side of the tables being empty saving that they had two mounting steps, whereby those who had there to doe might the easier come to the two tables. At the head of this hall was another table of black marble and against the wall a settle with seats, wherein sat two sealers which had the view and application of the writings, and the keeper of the seales who cancelled or sealed them according as hee iudged them lawfull or not, the marke of the seale was a hand open and in the palme thereof an eye regardant. In the mids of this chamber there was likewise (as in the other) a pillar made in the fashion of a rock of Lazurine stone, and vpon the same a statue of burnished yron in a feminine figure hauing one hand against her brest about her heart, and the other stretched forth presenting it with her open palme, and this was the Image of Faith or fidelitie firme and infringeable like yron and constant like a rock, holding and performing that which is promised with heave and deede: in the rock was engraue in greeke letters.

*Which is to say.*

*Beleeue nothing viles it appeare.*

*And in latine letters was written.*

*Fides fundamentum Iusticie.*

*Which signifieth that*

*Faith is the foundation of Iustice.*

At the two corners of the other ende of the great Basilican hall, were conioyned two grosse towers of hard stone, builded after the rusticall fashion strong and thick, not windowed, but lope holed like the holes made for a cannon straight barred with yron and barbicanes, with small light. Whereinto was no entrance but through a little wicket with two dozes of yron, barred and bolted comming out of the great hall: and these two towers were with thre roomes, the one in the ground very deep, without window or light, & that was called the Barathre: the middle out of the ground, receiuing a little shimmering light through the holes before named, and this was called Latomie: the third was above, hauing barred windowe and lettices, whereby those who were put therein might both see and bee seene, and for that cause it was called the Cage. Within these two towers were locked all malefactors either in the deepest middlemost or highest, according to the waight of their offences: beneath the great Basilican hall was a vault closed with strong wals on all sides, sauing it had a small dooze with bares of yron, and a windowe grated with yron to giue light, within which vault (which was called Criptoportique, and no lesse wider nor larger than the great hall, and for cause builded with many small chambers) were put the ciuill prisoners or captiues, vnder the charge of a keeper being a sufficient honest man: as on the contrarie, for keeping the Towers, two rude and barbarous gaolers were appoynted. And also the keeping of the two Chambers both Councell and Sphragide was committed to two Consergers men right auncient and wise, both for the custodie of them, and apparrelling of the

the ball and Parquet when necessitie required. And at the two gates of the great hall were appointed two porters to open and shut them at sunne rising and going downe, according to the Equinoctiall time. Such was the Basilican Dicast of the iustice of Orbe, wherein Diocles the Potentate sat as president, right ouer against the which was the Hippodrome a great egall and vniformed place being in length 187. paces and a halfe, and in breadth 62. paces and a halfe, in fashion square, not equilaterall but farre more longer than large, all enuironed with triple galleries erected one about another with arches sustented with little carued pillars; and this was the place, where men on horseback ran for the best game for the ring, and there was the place of Justice and triall of armes on horseback with lance, sword, hatchet, and club. At one of the ends of the Hippodrome was the barriers wherein the horses were enclosed, beating the ground with their feet, and forcibly staying till the signe of running were given by the trumpets at the commandement of the Judges: at the other end was a scaffold of marble stone five degrees of height and seats thereon for the saydest demostels of the towne to sit, assigned thereunto by ordinarie exchange to giue and deliuer the prize of honour and valour to the best vners, according to the sentence of the Judges who had their places in a tower porch in the mids of the Hippodrome, beuolent the ranks of the galleries: and on the other side right ouer against them were mounted the trumpets, who at the commandement of the Judges sounded to giue signe. And so soone as the barriers were open, the gallant light horse issued out to the course, and the Knights to the lists to iust: to see one assaying to carrie away the prize and honour, being no les pricked forward by the sharp regard of the sayde maydens, then their horses were moued with the sound of trumpets and prick of the spurs: and thus you may perceine what the Hippodrome was. The third building was the Prytan or publique house of the citie: in the forefront whereof was a large lower court, and from thence one mounted by two staires of stone into a right great and large hall garnished all along

along the walls with benches, and at either end a great chimney above the benches, the walls were covered with buckers and rattles, whereon were hanged all sorts of armes, swords, lances, cozelets, morraines, and other harnis in abundance. In this hal the people assembled in the last weeke of December to change the magistrates of the pere before, and to chuse new for the yeares following, and to take advise what was to be done for the welfare of the common wealth. Over and beside this great hall there was a walking place squared, and cldere on all sides with many windowes. Through this was a way into another lesse hall both close & secret with a treble port, and thre other to guard them. Where the politick gouernours of the towne (who were 12. in number) consulted and concluded the weightie affaires concerning the common wealth of Orbe. Next to this part of the building was another great court, and in the mids thereof a fountaine with two cisternes whose top being of alabastrer cast out water, through thre pipes in great abundance: beyond this court on the back side of this publique house, was another great and large part, hyane, sumptuous and magnificent, comprehending two great halls, the one below elevated, notwithstanding eyght stappes high on the one side, and on the other side in the fashion and forme of a ladder: the other above of like greatnes having their kitchins and offices on the one side, the other opening with treble windowes into the court, which two halls were garnished with tables of Cedar, and with stoles and chappes suitable round about them, and two graine bevs of repose; the xellow being hanged with rich and saye capistris: wherein those who dwelt there came to eat, drinke, walke and deuise one with another, that is to say, such as by any good work, or profitable inuention, either by wisdome, valour, liberalitie or other vertuous act, both honorable and profitable to the Citie had well merited of the common wealth. For whom in prize of honour and fauor, this saye lodging was appropriated, where they were at the common expence, nourished and entertained gorgeously with daply banquets in the foresaid halls, serued with officers

and servants (at the common expence) with hall, meates and dishes, in rich vessel of gold siluer and christal, and with precious hymnen: besides this, they were accompanied euerie day with the most apparant and noble Lords and Ladies of the towne, recounting vnto them often times their meritorious good deeds with praise and thanks. Moreover they receiued euerie morning euery of them a sayre flower (according to the season) with humble reuerence & a sweet kisse of the most sayrest maidens of the citie. And to retire themselves privately apart, was ordeyned a great gallerie transfuersing the foresaid halls and parted into 24. chambers, all garnished a like with rich beds of imbodery with tables & tressels wrought and furnished with tapistrie & delicious linnen, every chamber hauing adioyning vnto it a wardrop & cabin, with a page proper and ready to serue them: the prospect of which chambers was partly easterly and partly southerly, into the most ample gardens, bowers, and meadows, where the birds continually delighted them with their sweet & melodious songs: all which was done at the expence publique of the Citizens. Besides this euery yeare was made in the great hall below a Panegyricall oration in the honoꝝ and praise of the wel deserving of the common wealth, all which things were done and maintained in the Prytarhouse, to moue and giue courage to al vertuous young men to do such acts, whereby they might get such fauour and meritorious praises as that they might be nourished & nobly entertained at the expence of the common wealth, in reward of their desert & good deeds which they esteemed a most great honoꝝ proceeding of iust cause, as in truerh it was: and thus you may perceiue what the Prytan was. Now resteth the Theatre and the Sands whose proportion was in fashion, like to an egg, containing 2000. paces about, the wals wherof being of diuers coulozed marble, were deuised in thre ranks of admirable arches below, in the midst & above, elevated of an incredible height, euery ranke contyning 72. arches: among those above, were placed so many sayre statues as there were pillars to vpholde the arches: beside, ouer and above the ranks of arches, was another

another ranke with 72. large and ample windowes giuing light to the halls about the Theatre whereby the people might looke in and out of the same : the entrance whereof was through 12. gates into the place, where for the ascending bp, were eleuated 45. seats of stone, the highest whereof had compasse 1098. foote, and the twentieth seate after in descending which was the middle degree had 726. foote in compasse, and the lowest and last of all had 300. foote in compasse: whereby a man may coniecture what the other 42. seates did containe in compasse, wherein 25000. people might sit at their ease to beholde the pastimes, euerie one of them hauing one foote and a halfe for his place, without reckoning the largenes of the 12. gates. At the foote of these degrees was the Orchestre, wherein sat the Lordes and Magistrates, and before them a little belowe was the place and platforme where for the solace of the common people and to win their fauor, the richest and notablest Citizens oftentimes did vse and exercise all manner of ployes and pastimes. In the same proportion right before and in the sight of the Theatre was a great long large and ample place emptie and discovered: which was called the Arenes because the ground was strawed all ouer with sand, to the end that both beastes and men might haue surer footing which came thither to the chace, to fight for the best game, or for the exercise of their bodie, for wrestling, running, leaping, casting the barre, or for fighting with cudgells or sharpe swords, naked or armed, or to chace and fight with all sortes of fierce and cruell beastes. At the end of which place was the sepulchre of the ancient Archier Caliste, before the mouth of a cloaque or gut where the great Serpent abode, against whome Alector the same day should fight. Such was the Theatre and Sands of Orbe: and of such magnificence was these foure noble buildings at the foure corners of the market place, where the foure great Streets met in the highest of the Citie: and where the most Emperiall Temple of Ioue was placed, the exuberant fountaine, and the sayre and holy lodging of the Archier,

and his Spinisters, together with the house called Vaniah which is as much to say as the nourishment of our Lord: for therein were nourished the poore, olde, sick, lame, impotent, and fraile people, together with the poore Widowes and Orphanes, with the goods offered to God in his temple. Besides all this, there was diuerse other publique places, as porches and walking places aswell in raynie weather as in saye: the foure markets, viz. the wheate market, the wine market, the fleshy market, and the fish market; and the fift market of fruite, eggs and white meats. Moreover there was yet another great and large porch full of seats and desks, intermingled with walking places and galleries, and a high pulpet of whole stone cut and carued, which was the place of reading and disputation of all sorts of artes and sciences, and all at the publique charge of the Citie. Furthermore at the foure gates were foure saye keys vpon the riner side of Cloterre which went round about the Towne, at which keys ordinarie arriued great boats charged with all sorts of Merchandize, comming from all parts, and not onelie by river, but by land with Waggones, Mules, Cammells, and other horses. For the recrite and bestowing of the which, were appointed round about the keys great ware houses, and at euerie keye a great porch, wherein the Merchants of all Countreys and Nations assembled together, and kept generall exchange of Golde Silver and Money with writings, letters, answers, bills of exchange and re-carriage, and all sorts of negotiation. Thus you see and behold the description of the renowned Cite of Orbe, which hath beene set downe here by way of digression: after which extravagance we must returne againe to our matter, which was of the combat betweene Alector and the serpent of the Bands.

*Of the Combat and Victorie of Alector against the  
Serpent. Of the arrowe throwne up into the ayre  
With imprecation, of the fall thereof in flaming fire  
upon Coraſſon, and of his horrible death.*

CAP. XXV.

**T**He people of Orbe the ſame day af-  
ſembled themſelves in greater num-  
bers than ever had been ſene befoze,  
not onelie for the meruaile of the  
Combat, but alſo to expect the hope  
of the publique weale according to  
the revelation with the Archier had  
ſhowne them in the morning: where-  
by there was ſo great a multitude  
of people, as well Citizens as ſtrangers, that all the degrees  
were full, all the windowes arches and galleries, yea all the  
pinacles and tops of the walls were charged with people. A-  
mongſt the reſt came alſo the two wiſe men Franc-Gal and  
the Archier Croniel, for whom (by reaſon of his Biſhoplike  
dignitie) was reſerved the moſt honorable ſeate in the Or-  
ches tree, from whence he might beſt beholde and moſt open-  
ly diſcouer all the ſands and Theatre. He who knew his place  
went to ſit downe, leading and ioyning with him Macrobius  
Franc-Gal, vpon whom vniuerſally al the Theatre caſt their  
eyes, and all thoſe befoze whom he paſſed aroſe and enclined  
their heads in ſigne of reuerence to him: brought ſingular ad-  
miration of the reuerend dignitie of his face, full of probable  
maieſtie which they ſaw him in his viſage: and in the more  
than royall comelines, ſoyne, faſhion, ſtreightnes, height,  
greatnes and giantly ioynture of this ſo fayre and ſo heroical  
an olde man that their worſhipfull Arch Prieſt Croniel with  
ſo great honored with him: ſpecially ſe armed (for hee car-  
ried his armour with him) and clothed with ſo rich a cloake  
of purple and with his pprecious and diſtillate ſhield of azure  
with

with the Sonne of Gold. To be brieft the whole assistance of the Theatre through great admiration of him had their ententise regard vpon Franc-Gal.

Whereupon the trumpets sounded and Alector was set into the Bands clothed only with his purple hat on his head, and his iagged Gallican coate of armes, with his Jasseran fringed with Gold, and armed with his good sword with the Lyberian scabbard, and with his green shield with the Cocke of Golde, together with the slaughterous arrowe: for the rest so saye, that he seemed to be made and formed to be beholden of all; young, vigorous, membrous, well set, great, tall, and of a hardy and assured countenance, in such sort as there was none (specially of the young Ladies and Maidens) but pitifully beholding him, lamented that so saye a young gentleman should bee set into so mortall a danger, whereout (as they thought) it was impossible that hee should escape: nevertheless hee walked brauely attending his enemy. Now was it the day and houre that the Dragon was accustomed to receive his ordinarie foode, whereupon smelling presently the fresh humaine flesh he issued out of his Cloaque behinde the Sepulchre of Caliste lifting vp his dragonlike head with flaming and piercing eyes, with his great and open throate, full of venomous teeth set in triple order, and casting out a horrible hissing with three vberant tongues, which gaue a mortall feare vnto all the assistants of the Theatre, saving vnto the hardie Alector, against whome the serpent with great turnings and windings came to deuoure, thinking verilie at the first mouth full to haue swallowed him vp, which all the beholders thought likewise. Amongst whome Franc-Gal beholding this saye yong youth so clothed, armed, and put into so mortall a perill, incontinently knew that it was his sonne, and therewithall through hideous feare hee became so white and pale as an image of plaister, stiffe like a statue of stone, & cold like vnto a pillar of brasse: for the which he had presently Aqua Vitæ cast into his visage & into his mouth: whereby recouering againe his spirits hee cast forth a most high & dolorous cry, saying: ah saye Son Alector, Alector my

my deere child! Who is hee that hath vniustly condemned thee being an innocent child vnto so horrible & pererles a combat? As this the foze sage of the funestriall bird, which showed mee that at the Sands I should finde thee? Alas! In deede I haue found thee, but by and by I shall see the lost: whereby I shall finde the foresaying ouertrue and cursed, which tolde me that I should finde thee, but neuer after see thee, as in trueth I shal, for the Draconicall belly shall be thy Sepulcher: yea so shall it be mine, for with thee will I dye or else saue thee from so strange a death. This saying he cast off his Cloake, drew out his great and large sword, embraced his sayre Celestiall shield with the Sunne of Gold, and would with al his foze haue descended into the Sands to succor his sonne: but the 400. men of armes who enclosed the field, with stood him: through whom neuerthelesse he had by his ballour passed, had not the Archier been, who with instant prayers and tokens bidd him: declaring vnto him that by no meanes hee ought to strue against the iudgement of the Potentate of Orbe, which also by any humane foze hee could not, praying him to haue patience and good hope in the bountie and reuelation of the Soueraigne God Ioua, by faith in whome hee assured him that Alector should depart conquerer: who in the meane while fought valiently with his monstrous enimie: and hauing vnderstoode the crye of Franc-Gal and apperceiuing the shield with the sunne, knew that his father was there present; who with all his foze would haue helpt him: whereby his courage encreased and his forces redoubled by the presence of his genitor, to whome hee cried: O my Lorde my Father trouble not your selfe, neither haue doubt of me, but assure your selfe that within a while I will come to salute and imbrace you, being once victorious of this wicked beast, in the meane while your onely presence and sight shall be my sufficient ayde.

This hardie and confident speech bidd Franc-Gal, aboue other things; neuerthelesse trembling like a leafe at euery assault the serpent made, who was aboue threescore foot in length and a yard in greatnes about, with a profound throte and gaping. Who seeing himselfe frustrate of his purpose, and that his inuasions were employed in vaine, by reason of the legeri-

tic and swift turning of the vigorous Alecto, was chased in his colde nature, and so prouoked that his throte was all swolne with horrible venym, which hee had gathered together through spightful anger that he found resistance in one onelie man. Therefore hee wound himselfe into a great roule, and suddainely by plunging out himselfe hee would assaile Alecto, who readily leaping aside lent him great blowes ouerthwart the bodie: and giuing him many wounds; but not deepe enough by reason of the hardnes of his scales: wherewithall hee raised the Sand. Nevertheless once hee rouled by his long tayle so impetuously wherewithall hee whipped Alecto (who tooke not good heede of it) with a blow so violent, that hee stroke him to the ground, and suddainely turned his head and great throte to haue deuoured him. Then Franc-Gal was out of countenance, his spirit was troubled, and his knees fayled him: likewise all the people became sad, esteeming Alecto for overcome and lost; but the couragious Champion seeing the deadly throte of his enemy open ouer him, with his right hand gaue him such a prick, that hee made a deepe wound in his throte whereout did spring black bloud and thick red venym in great aboundance: and with his left hand couered himselfe with his shield. The furious serpent perceiuing in the shield the figure of a golde Cock highly eleuated (which naturally he feareth) & smelling withall the sauour of the scabbard which was made of the skin of a kinde of Serpent, what with suddaine feare, and with the paine he felt of the wound in his throte, he quickly retired himself, in such sort that the gentle champion had leasure to rise & pursue his enemy, who fearing the shield, the Librian scabbard, & the point of the sword which he had felt to the quick, would not cast himselfe vnaduisedly vpon Alecto, but began to play againe with his tayle to strike him to the ground. But Alecto who once had bin stung therewith before; took better heed, & every time that the serpent stroke at him with his taile, hee would nimble spring vp into the ayre, in such sort that his strokes were imployed in vaine vpon the sands: which caused this dragonlike monster to chafe in his fury, and with great ire turned his head toward Alecto, who still put before him the shield which he knew to be a feare vnto

unto him: and for that hee sawe that the blowes of his sword  
would but little preuaile vpon his hard skin, he thrust the sterke  
point of his good sword so firmly into his scales, that it ran so  
deep in & pierced so rudely, as Alecto could not pluck it out a-  
gaine: & the serpent being a beast of merueilous force, in turn-  
ing himselfe with a strong pluck snatched it out of his hand.  
Then new feare assailed Franc-Gal & al the beholders, losing  
the short ioy which they had receiued of the two wounds made  
in the throte & back of the serpent whereat blood & venom is-  
sued most aboundantly: & for that they knew not whether they  
were deadly or not, they remained doubtful betwixt feare and  
hope. In the meane while the serpent being impatient of his do-  
lorous grieffe which he felt, turned his head towards his back,  
and biting with his teeth the hiltes of the sword whose point  
sticking fast grieued him, so much plucked at it, and with force  
of anger so wrong it, alwaies widening & tearing the wound,  
that at the length he pluckt it out and cast it on the sands, not  
without great losse of the most part of his teeth. And then per-  
ceiuing his enemy vnarmed, he cast himselfe furiously vpon him  
Alecto not hauing any thing wherewith to defend him, pre-  
sented him his shield: & remembering the arrow which hee had  
struck at his girdle, pulled it out readily and placed it so betwixt  
the iawes, of this wicked beast; that he could not shut his teeth  
to gripe the arme of Alecto, for the more he strone with it, the  
faster it stuck: moreover he found himselfe grievously offended  
with the body of the arrow which made of *Asse*, being an *A-  
lexitharian* wood, and naturally contrary to the serpents kinde.  
Whereupon this monstrous dragon retired in weaching him-  
selfe horribly through the great dolor & anguish which he felt:  
not only of the wounds, & arrow, but also of the wood therof be-  
ing wholly against his nature & kind, for by plucking out where-  
of he had neither feet nor hands: wherefore he thrust into his  
mouth, the end of his taile, which auailed him nothing being  
ouer feeble and hauing lost his force by reason the scale of his  
back was broken. Whereupon this monster finding himselfe  
thus wounded, overcharged with the wood and head of  
the shaft contrary to his kinde, affeabled of his force, and  
his aduersary nere at hand carrying the Cocks and scabbard

where were so fearefull vnto him, and who againe had recou-  
 red his sword, would no more assaile him, but terrifying himself  
 by turning and wreathing as fast as it was possible for him,  
 sought to enter againe into his Cloaque, which hee could not  
 speedily doe because the breaking of his back hindered his for-  
 mer legeritie whereby he thought to haue entred his hoale: the  
 which Alectorséeing, and knowing his great atuantage by the  
 crye and hute of the beholders ioyfully clapping their hands,  
 got before, and cut off the way to this flying monster, by turn-  
 ning his head with great stroakes of his sword vpo his iawes  
 and on his taile when he began to resist him with it, so strong-  
 ly and so often that by little and little the Serpent began to  
 waxe so feeble, and his fiercenes so to diminish, that not able  
 longer to hurt, he sought wholly to fflye. In such sort that the  
 gentle Squire came before him, and without feare thrust his  
 arme with the sword so far into his throte that it pierced his  
 heart. The serpent feeling thereby his deadly wound, began  
 through extreame paine and anguish to turne & winde in cruel  
 wise. Alector then being ioyfull, and seeing his white belly vn-  
 couered which was without scales, thrust in his sword a foote  
 belowe his throat, and so cut it down to his nauell: in such sort,  
 that with the bloud, venym, fat & intestines there issued out of  
 the belly of this deuouring serpent the body of a man all consu-  
 med, whome he had but two dayes before swallowed downe,  
 the bones onely remayning like an Anotomy, wrapt in some  
 peeces of bloudie and filthie clours. And the serpent a little be-  
 fore being the terror to a whole towne, who had made so many  
 crooked turnes and windings, and giuen so many blowes with  
 his venymous taile, and that had eaten so many people, being  
 then vanquished, slaine, ripped and constrained to voyde that  
 which he had deuoured, and all by a young man: did that (be-  
 ing dead) which neuer in his life time he would doe: that is, he  
 stretched himselfe out right like a false pillar, and occupying in  
 his so lying a great part of the Sands. Alector beholding him  
 in this wise began to say: O wicked beast when thou canst no  
 longer harrie, thou dost that which is right & good. If thou in  
 thy life time haddest mainteyned thy selfe so right, as thou hast  
 conformed thy self at thy death, so many people had not by thee  
 been

been deuoured, nor thou slaine. And in saying so, he mounted  
 vpon him with his feete, and rode vpon the head of the dead  
 serpent, in singing for ioy with a high and clere voyce and face  
 lifted vp to Heauen an Epinic song of victorie which hee had  
 learned in the Polonian language passing through that coun-  
 trey, when as the spirit of Gallehaut carried him away: to the  
 great consolation of the people, & incredible ioy of Franc-Gal  
 his good father. This done he put by his sword: and then pul-  
 led the arrow out of the serpents throte: the which he holding  
 in his hand, and biewing it red with the fresh bloud of the ser-  
 pent, and as yet stayned with the old bloud of his Lady Noë-  
 mia slaine, could not but cast out with a profound sigh three  
 great teares without weeping, & these words. O murdering  
 Archer that with this arrowe hast traisterously slaine the inno-  
 cent Noëmia Gratian the fourth of the Graces before their  
 worthe statues, and betwene mine armes, and who through  
 an euill conscience of thy wicked deed darest not manifest thy  
 self, thinking by occult dissimulation to escape the iust venge-  
 ance: I beseech the Soueraigne God Ioua, who in this tem-  
 ple before vs is worshipped, that the bloud of the innocent  
 which I see yet on this arrowe, may fall with cruel vengeance  
 vpon thee, that thine iniquitie may descend vpon thy head, to  
 the terrible example of al enuious traitors and spoylers of the  
 innocent. This spoken he darted by the arrowe into the ayre  
 with such impetuositie, & accompanied (as it is credible) with  
 the vertue of some superioꝝ power, that it mounted with an vn-  
 speakeable legeritie so high, that all the assistants who had  
 their view still towards heauen lost the sight thereof, attending  
 when it should fall, longer than an houre with great merueil-  
 ing. And seeing it not to fal, they descended into the Arcnes to  
 behold the horrible body of the serpent lying vpon the sands,  
 so enoꝝmious, hideous and fearefull (albeit hee was dead) that  
 the greater part of the multitude durst not approach him, but  
 beheld him a far off: sauing onely the vanquisher Alector which  
 contemplated him in his length, greatnes and terrible forme,  
 armed with impenetrable hardnes, with the deadly venom of  
 sharp teeth, with catching without letting goe, with a deuour-  
 ing throat, & consuming belly, and with the miserable remain-

ders of his deuorations. And hereupon considered the grace of  
force and hardines which the Soueraigne had bestowed vpon  
him to overcome such a monster who hild so notable a towne  
in so miserable a subiection: neuerthelesse hauing some doubt  
of his death and whiles hee sought very curiously on all sides,  
behold a voyce issuing out of the barren corps of this monster,  
sounding so high & great, that it was heard through the whole  
Theatre in these words:

*Sonne of Franc-Gal which now hast overthrowne,  
The reuenger of Calistus lately slaine:  
To thee full heauie newes, by me is shewne  
That thou shalt be transforme for this thy paine.*

These speeches being cried high and deepe like the thick sound  
of a thunder bolt was heard of all, who ran to see what it was,  
but nothing appeared; for the serpent was stark dead, and this  
voyce proceeded not from the beast but from some spirite, to  
giue aduertisement of terror to Alecto of that which was to  
come: whereto he toke then no great heede for admiration of  
this monster and great ioy of his victoy. And thus as the  
whole multitude were about him and the Serpent in contem-  
plation, astonished at the enormitie of the one and vertue of the  
other: behold the arrow an houre before darted by him to-  
wards Heauen, with a great bruit fell downe from thence a-  
gaine in a flaming fire, cutting the high region with a sharpe  
sounde and lightning, with such impetuositie amidst the feare-  
full multitude, that it fell vpon the head of a young man na-  
med Coraeton bozne in Orbe of better house than name, who  
being stricken therewith, and attaint with this Celestiall fire  
inquenchable fell downe to the ground, where through the in-  
tolerable paines and heate wherewith hee felt himselfe bur-  
ned, he lay tumbling and groueling in the sands horrible cry-  
ing: Mercie, mercie Noemia, Mercie Franck Alecto, for  
I am the cursed Coraeton that through malicious enuie and  
enraged iealosie haue traiterously slaine the fayre Noemia  
with the proper arrow that now pierceith and burneth my  
braynes and entrailes. Mercie, (O Soule of Noemia) con-  
tent thy selfe with more lighte reuenge: what canst thou doe  
more to me, if the death be too little for me? O Alecto, for  
the

the loue of Noëmia (which was so deere vnto thee) I require  
of thee this last gift, that with thy sword (the reuenger of euil)  
thou wilt vouchsafe to abridge my life, and rid me out of the  
torment wherein I burne. Now truely (quoth Alecto, who  
would haue bin soye that the death of his Noëmia should haue  
bin reuenged with any other hand, than his owne) this graci-  
ousnes shall not be denied thee, but it shall not be with my good  
sword, because it is unworthie to be stayned with so wicked a  
bloud, and therewithall he tooke a halberd out of the hand of  
one of the 400. men which kept the field, and therewith gaue  
him such a blow vpon the head that hee cloue it in twaine, the  
braines all spzinckling about the sands burnt and smokie. Ne-  
uerthelesse for all this the Celestiall fire and the arrowe which  
had entred into his body ceased not to follow and burne him  
vntill the head, corpes, entrailes, flesh bones and sinewes were  
cleane consumed into stinking ashes, together with the mur-  
dering arrow. Such was the diuine vengeance that fell vpon  
on the traitor and enuious paricide Coraeton, wherewithall  
the people were astonished in feare and terroze of the great ver-  
tue and moze than humaine puillance supernaturally giuen  
to this young Esquire, who forthwith was taken by the Po-  
tentate Diocles accompanied with all the Assessours, Magi-  
strats, and Lords of the towne, and led into the chiefest place  
of the Theatre: wher (with Croniel the pontifical Archier) was  
Franc-Gal, so rauished with ioy for the health & victorie of his  
sonne Alecto, that he was beyond himself not knowing whe-  
ther hee were man or spirit, quick or dead, sensible or insensi-  
ble. And neuertheles his son Alecto came befoze al the multi-  
tude & saluted him w humble reuerence & childly cherefulness  
saying vnto him: My most honorable Lord & father, thanks be  
vnto the soueraigne, that beyond al my hope & in spight of the  
rauishing transport of the wicked spirits, we are againe assem-  
bled, & vnited together, and so shal continue if God please, who  
hath vouchsafed to grant me a sight of you after so long a de-  
part, & you to finde me after so long & vncertain a search: which  
I verily beleue you haue made. Franc-Gal vnderstanding his  
sonn answered him thus: Alecto my most dere child, the soue-  
raigne God Ioua increase thee with vertue, hardines & honoz.  
Then

Then beholding his shield, and eleuating his eyes to heauen,  
 began againe his speech, saying: Thanks be vnto the Soue-  
 raigne and to thee most high sonne, for that before my depar-  
 ture out of this mortall life (which shalbe very soone) wherein  
 I haue liued nine ages & more, I see before me my most dære  
 Sonne Alector borne of my Lady Priscaraxe Quene of Tar-  
 tary, and haue seen his first prowesse, promises of farre grea-  
 ter in time to come, with his first honors done vnto him in a  
 strange countrey, yea & that amongst his enemies such as had  
 vowed his mortall destruction: my child I pray the soueraign  
 Ioue that the order of knight hood may bee giuen thee by some  
 valiant and magnificall man: for of me thou hast sayled the re-  
 ceining therof: & when as thou shalt haue receiued it, perseuer  
 to honour Soueraigne Ioue, and to giue him praises euerie  
 houre both day and night. Lift vp thy spirit and eyes towards  
 heauen from whence thou hast taken original, and thy courage  
 to high enterprises; hardines, prowesse & honour alwaies ac-  
 companie thee; vertue, freedom, and liberalitie neuer abandon  
 thee; be freend to the good, an enemy & reuenger to the wick-  
 ed. My Sonne, the hand of the most puissant, most great and  
 most good God blesse thee, and my fatherly blessing take thou  
 in a good houre. Saying this he put his hand vpon the head of  
 his sonne: and then adressing his speech to the Croniell Ar-  
 chier, hee said thus: I likewise thanke thee (most vertuous  
 Archier, for thy faithfull conduct, honest company, and of thy  
 good and veritable soyetellings, which haue consoled me, and  
 giuen me to vnderstand that the end of my perigrination is at  
 hand, and that shortly the vaticination of Proteus shall bee ac-  
 complished: I haue liued and perfected the course which nature  
 hath giuen me. To be brieft my great Image shall goe vnder  
 the earth, and the flame of my Cierge remount vp to Heauen  
 from whence it came, cause my departure to be signified to my  
 faithfull companions who are at the next port with my Hip-  
 popotame but aboue al send word into Tartary to the Queene  
 Priscaraxe to let her vnderstand of my departure, to the end she  
 say no longer for mee. Croniell promised him to accomplish  
 his request, if the mortall thing should chance to happen, which  
 seemed to him neither to bee ready nor nere at hand, consider-  
 ing

ring at that present hee was both in perfect health and vigour. In the meane while the Magistrates, lords & multitude with great silence beheld these two persons strangers, the father and the sonne, in great admiration of their heroycal comelines, and equall and like beautie according to the difference of their ages: together with their excellent magnanimities, valiant facts and aduenturous deedes, and of their fortunate encountrie, and mutuall knowledge the one of the other in that place of the Theatre: in such sort that either without speech or knowing, vniuersally they held their immutable eyes vpon Franc-Gal and Alector. Then Croniel the Archier sayd: Wee men of Orbe, who vpon these 2. strange men doe cast your view in great admiration, know yee, that our Soueraigne God Ioua hath sent them into these regions frō far Septentrional countries for the publique health of our citie, and destruction of our domestical and interuall enemy, whom you your selues and in your presence haue seene slaine and discomfited by the sonne of this wise man: who likewise before hath deliuered the woods and fields round about vs from the danger of the terrible Centaure whom he slew, and deliuered the saye Noemia from his hands: which afterwards was the occasion of the scandale that now hath turned to our great common good, for therewith we are bound to him, and owe the greatest and chiefest honoꝝ and praise next vnto God. To whome: first of all let vs goe and render thanks in his temple, where we wil deuise further with what pyse of honoꝝ wee shall acknowledge the merit of this young man. All the people general answered hereto. So be it.

*Of the thanksgiuing in the Temple, the publique praise, the prize of honour assigned; with the ciuill crowne giuen to Alector. Of the death of Franc-Gal, the lamentation for him, his elevation and translation, of the losse of Hippopotame; and of the bird sent away as a messenger.*

CAP. VI.

**A**T these words the Archier betwene the Father and the Sonne went right to the temple; whereto hee was followed of the Potentate, Magistrats, Lords, and the greater

greater part of the people. And being come thither there were set on the highest degree before the altar, three chappes. In the middlemost the Archier tooke his place, in the two others Franc-Gal and Alektor were placed, and the Potentate with the other Lords, counsellors, and other Magistrates, betooke them to their accustomed seats. This done, all of them following the example of their Bishop bowed their knees and enclined their heads in silent prayer and thanks giuing: and afterwards rising vp, at the suite and imitation of their Priest Croniell and his ministers, with the sounds of all sorts of instruments according with the voyce, in harmonious Musick they sung this song following.

*Thanks be to loue our great and Soueraigne Lord,  
Who hath vs brought out of these mortall dangers:  
Honor and praise we people him afford,  
That hath vs saved by the hands of strangers.  
O blessed spirits, and sacred Angels bright  
Vouchsafe now to present before his throne  
Our gratefull psalme and song of sweet delight  
Acknowledging that through his grace alone  
The worthie child and Sonne of vertuous fyre  
Hath slaine our foe, that did our death conspire.*

After this psalme sung with great toy and iubilation, the Bishop Croniell spake vnto all the assistance in this manner:  
 22 This day haue you scene (my Lords & friends) that thing ac-  
 22 complished which not long since I haue shewed vnto you by  
 22 diuine reuelation which is vnfaillable: that is, the publique  
 22 health, with our deliuerance from the common terror and v-  
 22 niuersall danger, by the overthrow of the serpent; which this  
 22 young and valiant Esquire Alektor sonne of the sage Franc-  
 22 Gal, hath slaine, to the extreame hazard and perill of his life.  
 22 So as by this most vertuous act he hath restored your whole  
 22 citie to the wonted securitie: for the which all in generall owe  
 22 him thanks and honour, and not onely to him with vouchsa-  
 22 fed to accomplish the meritorious act of so great a praise:  
 22 but also, to his father, who for vs and the common wealch  
 22 of this citie hath brought into the World a Sonne of such  
 22 vertue. Now haue wee an ancient order and a most lauda-  
 ble

ble custome, not to bee ingraterfull to the well meritorious of  
our common wealth, but ouer and aboue our verball re-  
gratiation, to reward & honour them with some notable pub-  
lique deede, and some giift of honozable prize: wherefore pre-  
pare your selues to receiue this fauorable grace towards these  
two strangers, who to my thinking haue well deserued the  
same. At these words all the multitude cried with one voyce:  
we receiue thanks to Alector our perseuer, who hath exposed his  
life for vs against our internall mortall enemy, and that hath  
deliuered vs from his dangers: moreouer we giue thanks un-  
to his vertuous father Franc-Gal who hath sent vs such a wor-  
thie Sonne: and we likewise declare both of them wor-  
thie of the rights of our citie of Orbe, to be set amongst the estates of  
the Prytan, and particularly the ciuill crowne to be set vpon  
the head of Alector as a deliuerer of the citie; then quoth the  
Bishop: are you all of this minde, will and consent? Who an-  
swered with one voyce, yea: then the Archier caused to bee  
brought by his ministers, a most fayre crowne of gold, fashio-  
ned like to the leaues of an Oake enamelled with greene, and  
the bayes of waightie rubies, and the acornes of fine eme-  
raulds, which when he had taken it in his hand, he turned to-  
wards Franc-Gal and Alector, saying vnto them in this wise:  
My Lord Franc-Gal a man most vertuous, and thou Alector  
Esquire most valerous, the citie of Orbe vniuersally thanketh  
you for their wholesome deliuerance out of the danger and  
publique euill: in acknowledging whereof the Lords Magi-  
strats and all the people do grant vnto you being strangers all  
the rights and priuileges of this citie, and from henceforth re-  
ceiue you for citizens and Patrices of this towne of Orbe, in  
assigning to you the estate of Prytan, so great and honozable,  
that it is onely ordeined for the excellent benefactors, who  
haue wel deserued of the common wealth. Ouer and aboue the  
which, for especial honoz of thy vertue (Alector) of thy magna-  
nimity, & valiant victorie ouer the monstrous serpent of y<sup>e</sup> sands  
the internall enemy of the citie, for thy wor-  
thie reuenging of Noemias death, & slaughter of the sanage Centaure our exter-  
nal enemy, for the excellent prize of honoz for these thy valiant  
acts, they present thee w<sup>th</sup> this rich crowne, acknowledging thee for  
the

the liberator of their citie. In this saying he lifted vp the faire and rich crowne and set it vpon the head of Alestor, who receiuing it graciously with a shamefast rednes, resembled to one of Phoebus morning beames: his Father Franc-Gal beholding him so affectionately and fatherly with an extreame interior ioy at the honour wherein hee saw his Sonne, (a little before as an offender condemned) took such a suddaine ioy after the extreame dolors and deadly feares which hee had not long before conceiued aswell by his dreames, oracles, visions, augures, and proper prognostications, as also of the perill wherein he had seen his sonne vn hoped for in combat with the serpent, that his soule was almost out of himselfe through the violence of the vspeakeable aduentures, diuers encountries, suddaine chances vnlooked for, and strange mutations from sorrow into hope, from hope into trauaile and dolor, from trauel into doubt, from doubt into feare, from feare into vn hoped ioy, and from ioy into incredible admiration: by which diuers contrarie, and struing passions being perturbed he resembled a lining body in a rauished soule (as in trueth he was,) nevertheless such a new ioy shined in his merrie vermilion face full of gracious cherefulness: that it witnessed the pleasure which he receiued of the happy houre, and honour of his crowned sonne, as already from his infancie he had an euident signe. Alestor then seeing him thus repleat with ioy, demanded if the crowne were properly appertaining to him: and it was answered yea. Then he lifting it from his owne head, set it vpon the head of his Father Franc-Gal: who, through suddaine mutation (which is perillous and oftentimes deadly) from feare into assurance, and from sorrow into vn hoped ioy, being already halfe beyond himselfe, and feeling this sonnetie pittie to crowne him, through excessive ioy and loue, could no longer keepe his rauished spirit from flying away through vehement exultation: and at the same instant was scene a long, streight and a most pure and clere flame issuing out of his eyes, and mounting towards heauen through the top of the temple, which in trueth was the light of his cierge put out the last day of his peregrination in the temple of the Soueraigne God: according to the ordinance of the ancient Lady Anange, and of her

her three daughters Cleronome, Zodore, and Ternaime, who  
 as then ended the cierge of his life, ſight and way: in ſuch ſort  
 that he remained ſtill, and departed in the ſame habitude of ioy-  
 full and pleaſant face which he had, when (with the extremitie  
 of loue and ioy) the crowne was ſet vpon his head by his dere  
 ſonne Aleſtor: in ſuch ſort that none thought he had giuen vp  
 the Ghoſt but onely the good Croniell who beſore had re-  
 uelation of his departure: and who by conſerring the viſions  
 and oracles together and vnderſtanding priuately his ſpeeches  
 doubted the worſt. Wherefore hauing ſignified ſo much to the  
 people, in the preſence of them all he liſted vp his head by the  
 chin calling him three times by his name; but it auailed not,  
 for there remained neither life, ſoule, nor ſpirit in him, his  
 Sonne Aleſtor more ſorrowful of his fathers death, than be-  
 fore he had been ioyfull of his new glorie, embraced, accolled,  
 kiſſed, called and cried to him, but hee might eaſilie perceiue  
 him to be nothing but a ſtatue of fleſh ſeperated from the ſoule:  
 whereupon through great heauines and ſorrowe which ſtrooke  
 him at the heart hee ſwounded in the chayre, in ſuch ſort as it  
 was thought that both Father and Sonne had been dead, the  
 whole multitude being aſtoniſhed of ſo ſuddaine a mutation  
 from ioy into ſorrow, and from life into death. Neuertheleſſe  
 with the help of thoſe who ſtoode by, Aleſtor came againe to  
 himſelfe beginning with hauty cries to lament his Father, to  
 the great commiſeration of the whole multitude, who thus do-  
 lozouſly heard him crie: Alas Franc-Galm my Lord & Father,  
 haue you brought mee into this World, to haue no more ac-  
 quaintance with you, but only three dayes at Tangut and one  
 onely day at Orbe? Alas muſt it chance thus, that hauing tra-  
 uelled ſo many lands and Seas to ſerke me who was carried  
 away by the wind, you muſt finde me here in moſtall perrill to  
 your griefe, ſuddaine and ſhort ioy, and vnloked for death? O  
 my moſt dere father, wel haue I attended to be made knight of  
 your hand, for of a more wortheie a man I can neuer bee made.  
 Wel I ſee now that if I would be a ſonne any longer, I muſt  
 goe ſerke another Father: this ſaying hee fell downe againe,  
 neuertheleſſe he was by the Miniſters ſpeedily taken vp, and  
 by the Archier conſolated, who ſhewed vnto him the good and

long life of Franc-Gal his father, together with his happy death in extreme ioy and felicitie, without feele of paine or sorrowe, his glory of immortall renowne gotten through the whole world, which should rebound perpetually to his successors. For the better manifesting whereof (tending onely to the end to consolation) he turned his speech to the people, and by manner of an oration funebrell, hee declared what Franc-Gal was, his noblerace, his vertuous acts and deeds, his benefactions to all vniuersally (in ripping vp his whole life) and his strange aduentures as he had vnderstode them of Franc-Gal himselfe and as they haue been before declared and shewn. This oration being well vnderstood, all the people vniuersally merueiled at such a vertuous and heroycal personage, making for him a publique and common mourning from the highest Magistrate to the lowest of the poore people: who bore such reuerence to this most vertuous deceased Franc-Gal that they would not willingly lose the sight and presence of him, nor hide so noble a body vnder the earthly darkenesses. And therefore by the aduice of all the wise men and consent of all the people, and at the common expence and charges was made a great Tabernacle of most fine chrystall in fashion of a tower, wherein was enclosed the body of Franc-Gal, scituated in a chayre, the crowne on his head, in the same forme, habitude, and countenance of ioy, that he deceased in. In this estate they eleuated him vppon foure pillars of guilt brasse on the north side of the Altar, whereby they might alwaies haue him in their sight as a very Image of vertue: where hee remayned whole in his former beautie for the space of 400. yeares after, untill such time as the world began to commit Idolatrie to him, wherewithall the Soueraigne Loue being irited, one day hee caused it to bee lift vp by foure angelicall spirits, and transported into such a place, that afterwards it was no more seene. These funebrell things being accomplished, the next day the Archier conducted Alestor towards the Hauen, where they found Franc-Gal his companie attending their Master, to whom Alestor (who by them incontinently was knowne and cherished) commanded to discharge al the goods being vppon the Hippopotame, that they might bee conueyed to the towne.

stone of Orbe. Which when they had done, he shewed unto them this sorrowfull newes, willing them no longer to attend their prince, for that he was dead; whereat all of them being astonished demanded of him saying: Is Franc-Gal dead? And hee answered them absolutely: Franc-Gal is dead. At these words Franc-Gal is dead, the horse Durat Hippopotame began to moue (as one hauing understanding and intelligence of the death of his Master) and shaked his wings, scate, tayle, head and body with such a violence, that the Sea arose round about: and in this torment there issued out of the deepe Sea the olde man Proteus, who cried aloud, neuer man henceforth shall ride vpon thee. In this saying he led the horse into the Iostre Seas, where, in the sight and to the great sorrow of all the beholders, hee sonke him in the deapth, in such sort that neuer after hee was scene. The people of Franc-Gal seeing what had happened, and that they were both without conduct and meanes to ride on the Seas, followed Alecto as their Master till that they came to Orbe, carrying with them the goods and riches of their late Master, that they might present them to his entire body, and see him in his tabernacle: and as they were thus ready to returne, behold a bird passing by, came and rested on the shoulders of Croniell, who knowing this bird to be sent him by diuine ordinance, tooke her in his hands, and hauing written in a white leafe these verses:

*Priscaraxe Queene of Tartary, no longer doo attend  
The coming of Franc-Gal: for why, his life with ioy hath end.  
The onely seeing of his childe Alecto full of grace (face.  
With honor crown'd in vertue milde, hath wrought this dolefull*

He bound it to her neck, commanding her in the name of Ioua the name of y<sup>e</sup> soueraigne God, to be a faithfull messenger, and to carrie this letter to Priscaraxe Queene of Tartary and so let her flye with his benediction: and the bird as one hauing vnderstood his commandements incontinently tooke her flight ouer the Seas and septentrionall parts in such sort that within a while the companions of Franc-Gal, Alecto and Croniell, lost the sight of her, and returned to Orbe, where, what they did shall bee declared in the Second part.

*And*

## The first part

And how Alestor was transformed by phantasie into a bird,  
 and afterwards restored to his former shape, made Knight,  
 with his facts and heroycall deeds. Likewise the message done  
 by the bird to Priscaraxe, of her dolors, declining and transmi-  
 gration into *Aquitaine*, and all that happened to her there:  
 moreover of the passage of Alestor into *France* vnto the ob-  
 scure valley afterwards called by him *Van iour*, and of  
 his notable and worthie dwings. Finally his po-  
 steritie vntill the comming of the penltue  
 Pilgrime. All this shalbe shown  
 in the Second part and  
 thus shall ende  
 the first.

Though long at length.

FINIS.



